open rails

The evolutionary train simulator linking
MSTS compatibility to top-range features

Reference Manual

Version 1.0

Revised May 18, 2015

Contents[1]

1 Legal 1
2 New in This Release 2
3 Introduction 3
4 MSTS File Format Compatibility 6
5 Getting Started 9
6 Open Rails Options 13
7 Driving a Train 34
8 Open Rails Physics 70
9 Further Open Rails Rolling Stock Features 121
10 Open Rails Train Operation 122
11 Timetable Mode 151
12 Open Rails Multi-Player 171
13 Multi-Player: Setting up a Server from Your Own Computer 178
14 Open Rails Sound Management 182
15 Open Rails Cabs 186
16 OR-specific Route Features 191
17 Developing OR Content 192
18 In Case Of Malfunction 195
19 Open Rails Software Platform 199
20 Plans and Roadmap 202
21 Acknowledgements 203
22 Appendices 205

[1] Cover picture by Max Brisben

1 Legal

1.1 Warranty

NO WARRANTIES. openrails.org disclaims any warranty, at all, for its Software. The Open Rails software and any related tools, or documentation is provided “as is” without warranty of any kind, either express or implied, including suitability for use. You, as the user of this software, acknowledge the entire risk from its use. See the license for more details.

1.2 Properties Acknowledgment

Open Rails, Open Rails Transport Simulator, ORTS, openrails.org, Open Rails symbol and associated graphical representations of Open Rails are the property of openrails.org. All other third party brands, products, service names, trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of and used to identify the products or services of their respective owners.

1.3 Copyright Acknowledgment and License

©2009-2015 openrails.org This document is part of Open Rails.

Open Rails is free software: you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation, either version 3 of the License, or any later version.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License as part of the Open Rails distribution in Documentation\Copying.txt. If not, see http://www.gnu.org/licenses/.

2 New in This Release

Here are the features which have been added or substantially changed since v0.9 was released.

- Extremely high compatibility with MSTS content
- Train operation accordingly to timetables in .csv format, entered with a specific editor
- Support for languages other than English
- Support of 3D cabs
- Train physics far more realistic than in MSTS

Some experimental features have been added which you can turn on; some of them may affect performance:

- Compatibility with MSTS environment files
- Extended AI train shunting
- Adhesion linked to weather
- Support for DDS textures
- Extended viewing distance

3 Introduction

3.1 What is Open Rails?

Open Rails software (OR) is a community developed and maintained project from openrails.org. Its objective is to create a new transport simulator platform that is first, compatible with routes, activities, consists, locomotives, and rolling stock created for Microsoft Train Simulator (MSTS); and secondly, a platform for future content creation freed of the constraints of MSTS (in this manual MSTS means MSTS with MSTS Bin extensions, if not explicitly stated in a different way).

Our goal is to enhance the railroad simulation hobby through a community-designed and supported platform built to serve as a lasting foundation for an accurate and immersive simulation experience. By making the source code of the platform freely available under the GPL license, we ensure that OR software will continually evolve to meet the technical, operational, graphical, and content building needs of the community. Open architecture ensures that our considerable investment in building accurate representations of routes and rolling stock will not become obsolete. Access to the source code eliminates the frustration of undocumented behavior and simplifies understanding the internal operation of the simulator without the time-consuming trial and error-prone experimentation typically needed today.

Open Rails software is just what the name implies – a railroad simulation platform that's open for inspection, open for continuous improvement, open to third parties and commercial enterprises, open to the community and, best of all, an open door to the future.

3.2 About Open Rails

To take advantage of almost a decade of content developed by the train simulation community, Open Rails software is an independent game platform that has backward compatibility with MSTS content. By leveraging the community's knowledge base on how to develop content for MSTS, Open Rails software provides a rich environment for both community and payware contributors.

The primary objective of the Open Rails project is to create a railroad simulator that will provide 'true to life' operational experience. The Open Rails software is aimed at the serious train simulation hobbyist; someone who cares about locomotive physics, train handling, signals, AI behavior, dispatching, and most of all running trains in a realistic, prototypical manner. While the project team will strive to deliver an unparalleled graphical experience, 'eye candy' is not the primary objective of Open Rails software.

By developing a completely new railroad simulator, Open Rails software offers the potential to better utilize current and next generation computer resources, like graphics processing units (GPUs), multi-core CPUs, advanced APIs such as PhysX, and widescreen monitors, among many others. The software is published so that the user community can understand how the software functions to facilitate feedback and to improve the capabilities of Open Rails software.

Open Rails is published under the GPL license which is "copyleft"[1] to ensure that the source code always remains publicly available.

[1] http://www.gnu.org/copyleft/

3.3 Does Open Rails Need MSTS to Run?

This is not a correctly set question. Open Rails is able to run a vast majority of MSTS content (routes, trains, activities). Open Rails does not need MSTS executable files (e.g. .exe or .dll files), neither does it need .ini files.

However, if the MSTS content uses content files originally delivered with MSTS, such as tracks or general sounds (this applies in particular to routes), obviously to run such content OR needs such files.

If instead (and there are examples of this) the MSTS content does not use such original content files, again obviously OR does not need original MSTS files. Read here for further detail.

In both cases, MSTS content files (original and not) must be organized in an MSTS-compatible folder structure. Such a structure is described here. In this manual such a folder structure will be called an “MSTS installation” for clarity, even if this wording is not completely correct.

A proof that Open Rails itself does not need an MSTS installation at all to run is e.g. this route.

3.4 Community

At the present time, Open Rails software is offered without technical support. Therefore, users are encouraged to use their favorite train simulation forums to get support from the community.

- Train-Sim.Com http://forums.flightsim.com/vbts/
- UK Train Sim http://forums.uktrainsim.com/index.php
- Elvas Tower http://www.elvastower.com/forums/index.php?/index

For users interested in multiplayer sessions, a forum is set up for you to seek and announce hosting sessions: http://www.tsimserver.com.

The Open Rails team is NOT planning on hosting a forum on the Open Rails website. We believe that the best solution is for the current train simulation forum sites to remain the destination for users who want to discuss topics relating to Open Rails software. The Open Rails team monitors and actively participates in these forums.

3.5 Highlights of the Current Version

3.5.1 Focus on Compatibility

With this release the announced goal has been reached to make as much of the existing MSTS content as possible run in Open Rails. The development team's initial focus has been to provide a fairly complete visual replacement for MSTS that effectively builds on that content, achieving all the compatibility that is worthwhile, at the same time delivering a system which is faster and more robust than MSTS.

3.5.2 Focus on Operations

Release 1.0 clears the way to improving on MSTS in many ways which can be summed up as moving from Foundation to Realism and eventually to Independence, and already includes features that are beyond MSTS. Non-player trains can already have a first release movement orders (i.e. pickups, drop offs) based on files in MSTS format. Deadlocks between player and non-player trains, that are frequent in MSTS, have been practically eliminated.

3.5.3 Focus on Realistic Content

The physics underlying adhesion, traction, engine components and their performance are based on a world-class simulation model that takes into account all of the major components of diesel, electric and steam engines. This includes elements like friction resistance in curves and tunnels, a very sophisticated steam locomotive physics modeling, many optional curves to define precise locomotive physics, coupler forces and much more. It is foreseen that beyond release 1.0 Open Rails will approach the level of physics realism only available in professional simulators.

Existing models that do not have the upgraded Open Rails capabilities continue, of course, to perform well.

In the package of this version also ancillary programs (“tools”) are delivered, including:

- Track Viewer: a complete track viewer and path editor
- Activity Editor: a draft new activity editor to move beyond MSTS
- Timetable Editor: a tool for preparing Timetables

4 MSTS File Format Compatibility

Open Rails software supports the MSTS file formats detailed below. The software uses a file parser to read the MSTS file information for use by the Open Rails software. Testing of the parser software indicates that it will locate many errors or malformation in these files that are not highlighted by the MSTS train sim software or by other utilities. In most cases, the Open Rails software will ignore the error in the file and run properly. Open Rails software logs these errors in a log file on the user's desktop. This log file may be used to correct problems identified by the Open Rails software.

4.1 Trainset

The software currently supports Shape (.s), Shape Definition (.sd), Sound (.sms), Cab (.cvf), and texture Ace (.ace) files; including displaying the correct LOD, alpha and transparency attributes. Moreover it supports the file types: Engine (.eng); Wagon (.wag). It substitutes MSTS-style physics to enable the user to operate trains.

4.2 Consists

Open Rails software reads and displays Consist files (.con) used for Player Train, AI Train, and Loose Consists in activities.

4.3 Services

Open Rails software supports MSTS Service files (.srv) for the creation of both Player and AI services.

4.4 Paths

Open Rails software supports MSTS Path files (.pat) for determining the path of both Player and AI Trains.

4.5 Routes

Open Rails software supports the following MSTS Route files with the limitations noted.

- Route Database file (.rdb) - CarSpawner is supported.
- Reference File (.ref) – Open Rails does not provide a Route Editor in the current release.
- Track Database file (.tdb) – supported
- Route File (.trk) – Level Crossings and overhead wires are supported.
- Sigcfg (.dat) file – Signal & scripting capabilities are supported.
- Sigscr (.dat) file – Signal & scripting capabilities are supported.
- Speedpost (.dat) file – Supported
- Spotter (.dat) file – Supported

- Ssource (.dat) file – Supported
- Telepole (.dat) file – Supported
- Tsection (.dat) file – Supported
- Ttype (.dat) file – Supported
- Hazards (.haz) file - Supported

4.6 Environment

Open Rails software does not support advanced water dynamic effects at this time, while it supports first-level, player-driven dynamic weather effects.

Open Rails provides two types of environment representation that can be selected by the player at game start: a MSTS compatible one and a native one.

In the native version Open Rails software uses its own sky, cloud, sun, moon and precipitation effects developed exclusively for it. In activity mode the starting parameters for time of day and weather are read from the activity file to determine the starting display in Open Rails software.

4.7 Activities

Open Rails software runs without problems a great percentage of the passenger and freight activities created using the MSTS activity editor. It also offers some OR specific options to add interesting features to existing activities.

4.8 OR Folder Structure

Open Rails uses a subset of the MSTS folder structure to run.

The following folders, together with their related sub-folders, are needed at root level:

- GLOBAL
- ROUTES
- TRAINS
- SOUND

At root level no files are needed.

Within the GLOBAL folder the following sub-folders are needed if global (shared among more than one route) shapes and textures are used:

- SHAPES
- TEXTURES

Within the GLOBAL folder only the file tsection.dat is absolutely needed. Files sigcfg.dat and sigscr.dat are needed if there are routes that don't have their own specific files with the same names in their root folder.

4.9 Which Original MSTS Content Files Are Usually Needed To Run MSTS-Compatible Content Generated by Third Parties?

A general summary of which original MSTS content files within the Train Simulator root folders are usually used by MSTS-compatible content follows.

- **GLOBAL** root folder:

Many routes use specific track sets, like XTRACK, UK-finescale etc.

Routes which solely use such sets do not need any of the original MSTS files from GLOBAL, as all required files come from the relevant track set. There are however also many routes using original MSTS track sets. These routes will need part or all the files contained in the SHAPES and TEXTURES subfolders within the GLOBAL folder.

- **ROUTES** root folder:

In principle, to run a route only that specific route folder is required.

However, many routes - in particular freeware routes - use much material from the original MSTS routes, and therefore the original MSTS routes need to be available in order to properly install these routes.

- **TRAINS** root folder:

Requirements are similar to routes. Again, only the folders for the trainsets which are actually used are required, but many third-party trainsets refer to original MSTS files like cabviews and, in particular, sound files. Many consists refer to engines or wagons from the original MSTS routes but those can be easily replaced with other engines or wagons.

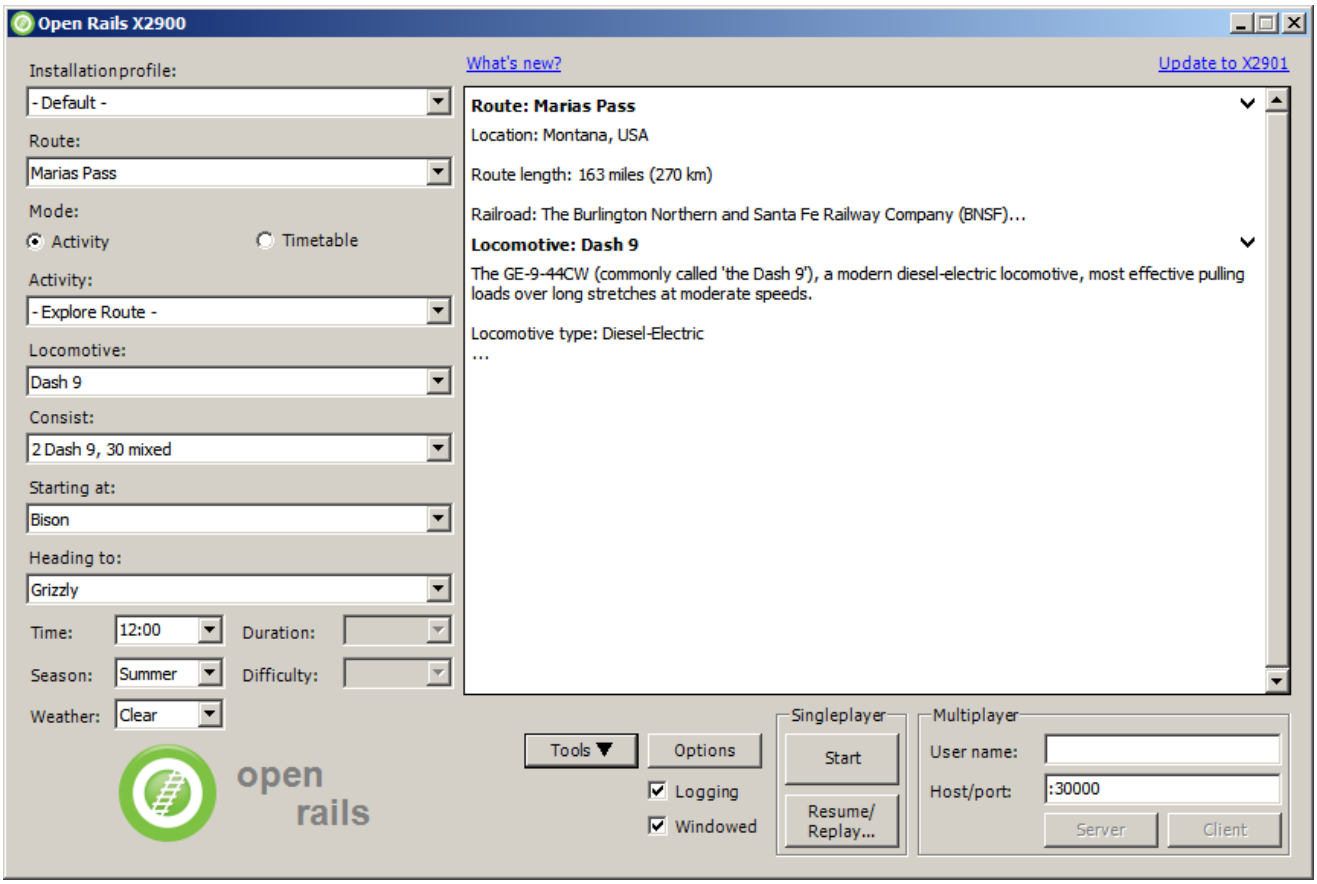
- **SOUND** root folder:

Only very few routes provide a full new sound set, so the original files included in this folder are usually needed.

5 Getting Started

After having successfully installed Open Rails (see the Installation Manual), to run the game you must double-click on the Open Rails icon on the desktop, or on the OpenRails.exe file.

The OpenRails main window will appear. This displays your available MSTS installations.



5.1 Installation Profiles

In the simplest case, where you have only a basic MSTS installation (see paragraph "Does Open Rails need MSTS to run?" for a precise definition of a MSTS installation) OR should already correctly point to that. Installation. To check this, you should initially see under "Installation Profile" the string " – Default –".Under "Route" you should see the name of one of the MSTS routes in your MSTS installation.

You can easily add, remove or move other MSTS installations and select among them (e.g. if you have any so-called "mini-routes" installed.). Click on the "Options" button and select the "Content" tab. See the "Content Options" discussed below for more instructions.

5.2 Updating OR

When a new release of OR is available and your computer is online, a link "Update to xnnnn" appears in the upper right corner. The string "xnnnn" is the release number of the newest release that matches your selected level of update. Various level of updates called Update Channels are available. You may choose the desired level in the "Options-Update" window, described below.

When you click on the update link OR will download and install the new release. In this way your version of Open Rails is always up to date. Note, however, that previously saved games may not be compatible with newer versions, as described here.

Clicking the link “What's new?” in the upper centre part of the main menu window will connect to a website that summarizes the most recent changes to the OR program.

5.3 Preliminary Selections

Firstly, under “Route:” select the route on which you wish to play.

If you check the “Logging” checkbox, Open Rails will generate a log file named OpenRailsLog.txt that resides on your desktop. This log file is very useful to document and investigate malfunctions.

At every restart of the game (that is after clicking “Start” or “Server” or “Client”) the log file is cleared and a new one is generated.

If the “Windowed” checkbox is checked, Open Rails will run in a window instead of full screen.

If you wish to fine-tune Open Rails for your system, click on the “Options” button. See the Chapter: “Open Rails Options” which describes the extensive set of OR options. It is recommended that you read this chapter.

5.4 Gaming Modes

One of the plus points of Open Rails is the variety of gaming modes you can select.

5.4.1 Traditional “Activity” and “Explore mode” modes

As a default you will find the radio button “Activity” selected in the start window, as above.

This will allow you to run an activity or run in explore mode.

If you select “-Explore Route-” (first entry under “Activity:”), you will also have to select the consist, the path, the starting time, the season and the weather with the relevant buttons.

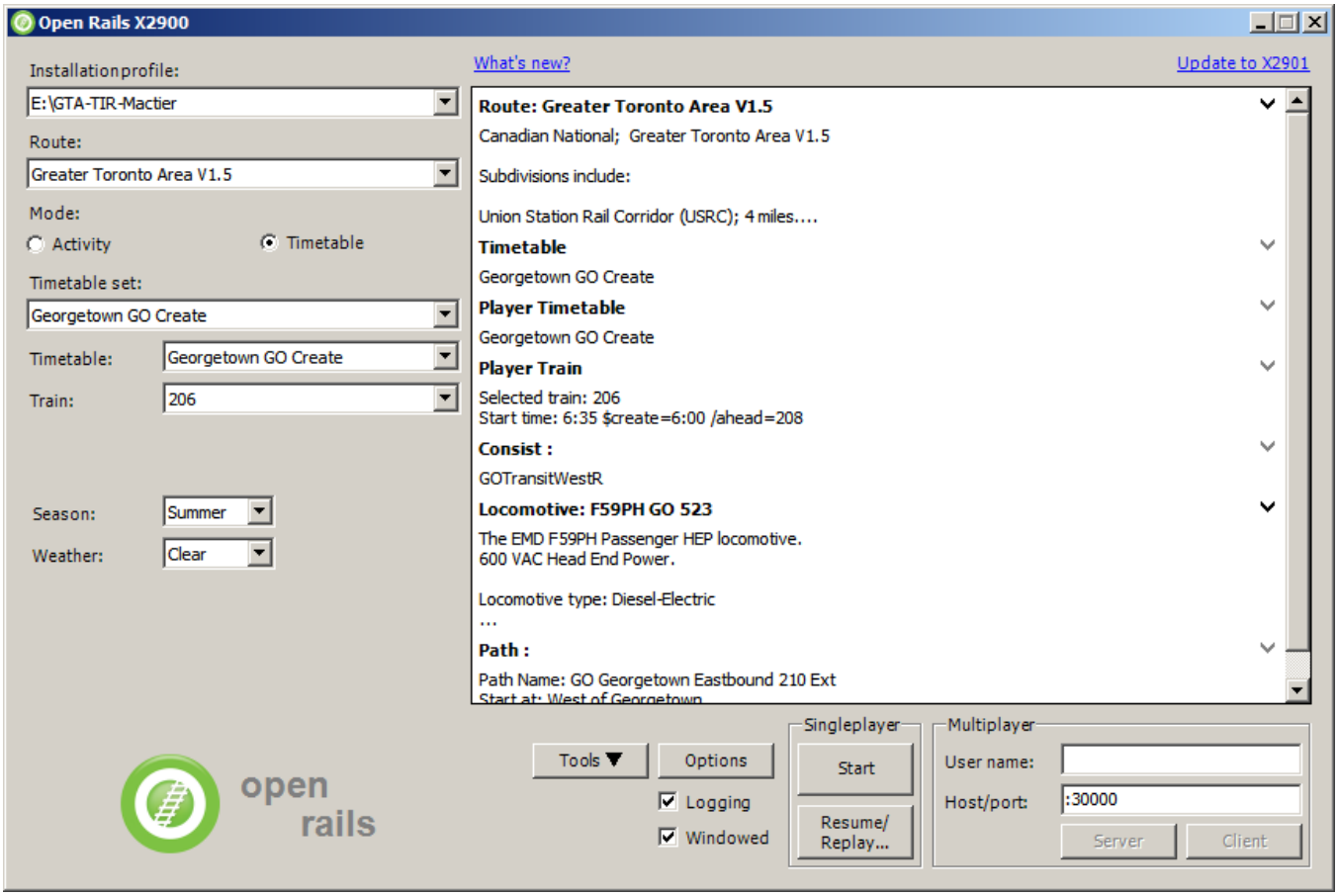
To select the consist you have two possibilities: either you click under “Consist:”, and the whole list of available consists will appear, or you first click under “Locomotive:”, where you can select the desired locomotive, and then click under “Consist:”, where only the consists led by that locomotive will appear.

If you instead select a specific activity, you won't have to perform any further selections.

If you have selected the related Experimental Option, at runtime you can switch Autopilot mode on or off, which allows you to watch OR driving your train, as if you were a trainspotter or a visitor in the cab.

5.4.2 Timetable Mode

If you select the radio button “Timetable”, the main menu window will change as follows:



Timetable mode is unique to Open Rails, and is based on a “timetable” that is created in a spreadsheet formatted in a predefined way, defining trains and their timetables, their paths, their consists, some operations to be done at the end of the train run, and some train synchronization rules.

Timetable mode significantly reduces development time with respect to activities in cases where no specific shunting or train operation is foreseen. The complete description of the timetable mode can be found here.

The spreadsheet has a .csv format, but it must be saved in Unicode format with the extension “.timetable_or” in a subdirectory named “Openrails” that must be created in the route's ACTIVITIES directory.

For the game player, one of the most interesting features of timetable mode is that any one of the trains defined in the timetable can be selected as the player train.

The drop-down window “Timetable set:” allows you to select a timetable file from among those found in the route’s “Activities/Openrails/” folder.

Now you can select in the drop-down window “Train:” from all of the trains of the timetable the train you desire to run as the Player train. Season and weather can also be selected.

5.4.3 Run!

Now, click on “Start”, and OR will start loading the data needed for your game. When loading completes you will be within the cab of your locomotive! You can read further in the chapter “Driving a Train”.

5.4.4 Multiplayer Mode

Open Rails also features this exciting game mode: several players, each one on a different computer in a local network or through the Internet, can play together, each driving a train and seeing the trains of the other players, even interacting with them by exchanging wagons, under the supervision of a player that acts as dispatcher. The multiplayer mode is described in detail here.

5.4.5 Replay

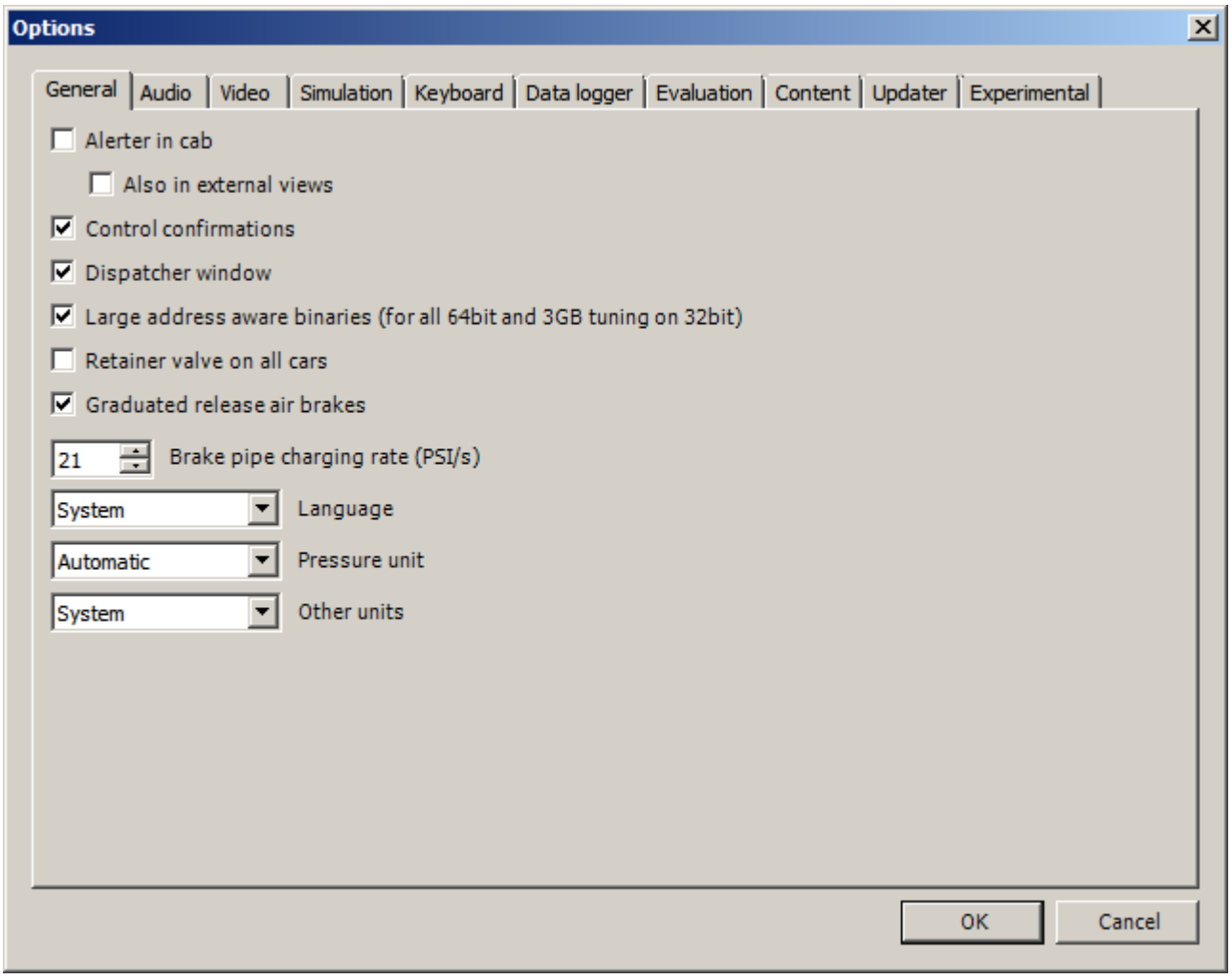
This is not a real gaming mode, but it is nevertheless another way to experience OR. After having run a game you can save it and replay it: OR will save all the commands that you gave, and will automatically execute the commands during replay: it's like you are seeing a video on how you played the game. Replay is described later together with the save and resume functions.

6 Open Rails Options

Clicking on the “Options” button opens a multi-panel window. The *Menu* > *Options* panels contain the settings which remain in effect during your simulation. Most of the options are self-explanatory; you may set them according to your preference and system configuration. For example, you can turn off dynamic shadowing if your system has low FPS (frames-per-second) capability. The options configuration that you select is saved when you click “OK”. When you restart OR, it will use the last options configuration that you selected.

There are 10 option panels, described below.

6.1 General Options



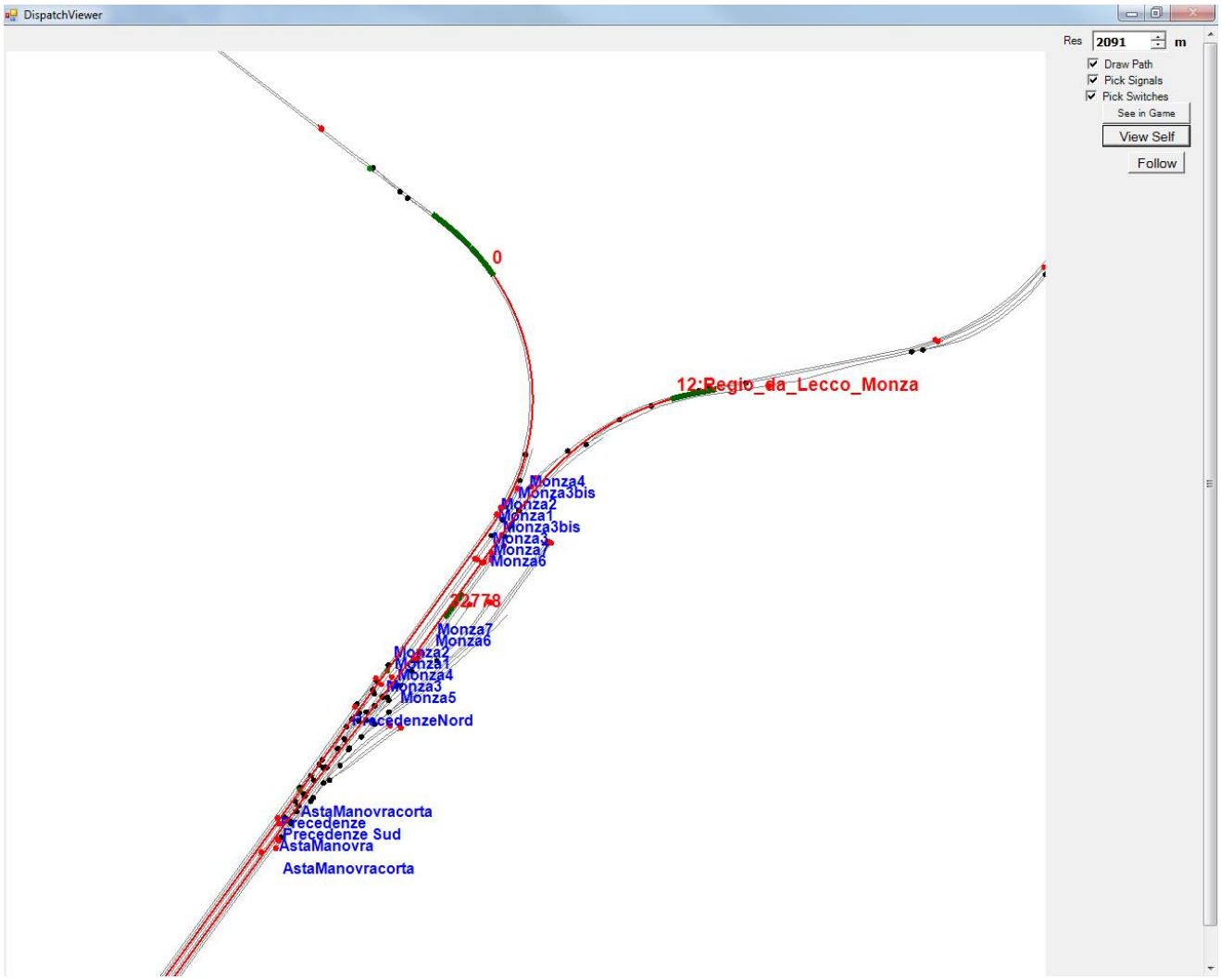
6.1.1 Alerter in Cab

As in real life, when this option is selected, the player driving the train is required to perform specific actions to demonstrate that he is “alive”, i.e. press the Alerter Button (or press the Key Z). As the player may sometimes use a view other than the cabview to follow the train, and therefore will not see the alerter warning, selecting the related option “*Also in external views*” enables the alerter in those views as well.

6.1.2 Dispatcher window

It is suggested to always select this option. When this option is selected, pressing Ctrl+9 at runtime creates an additional window like the following. This window coexists with the main Open Rails window, and Alt+Tab switches between it and the Open Rails window. See the related option "Fast full screen Alt+Tab".

Through this window you can monitor train movements and also influence them, by setting signals and switches. A complete description of the dispatcher window can be found here.



6.1.3 Graduated release air brakes

Selecting this option allows a partial release of the brakes. Generally speaking, operating with the option checked is equivalent to passenger standard and unchecked is equivalent to freight standard. A complete description of this option can be found here .

6.1.4 Large address aware binaries

It is suggested to leave this option checked. When it is unchecked, Open Rails can use a maximum of 2 GB of RAM. When it is checked, the maximum is 4 GB for 64-bit Windows systems, and 2 or 3 GB for 32-bit Windows systems. To increase the maximum RAM used by OR in 32-bit

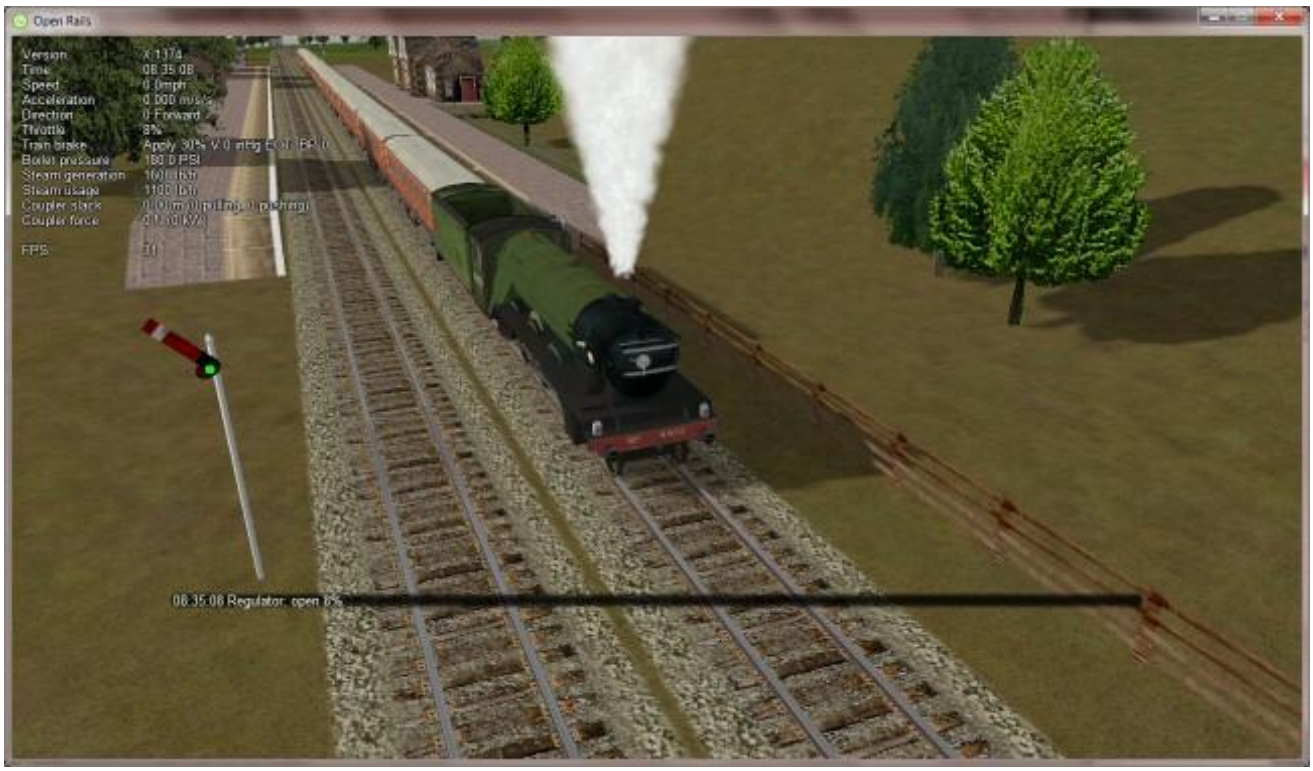
Windows systems from 2 to 3 GB see the information found here:

http://knowledge.autodesk.com/support/autocad/troubleshooting/caas/sfdcarticles/sfdcarticles/How-to-enable-a-3GB-switch-on-Windows-Vista-Windows-7-or-Windows-XP-s.html .

Take note that the RAM increase from 2 to 3 GB in 32-bit systems can slow down computer operation when not using OR.

6.1.5 Control confirmations

Following MSTS practice, whenever you make adjustments to the train controls (e.g. open the throttle) OR briefly shows a message near the bottom of the screen.



This is helpful for operations that don't have visible feedback and also allows you to control the train without being in the cab.

Uncheck this option if you prefer to monitor your cab instruments and don't want to see these messages.

OR uses the same message scheme for system messages such as "Game saved" or "Replay ended" but you cannot suppress these system messages.

6.1.6 Retainer valve on all cars

The player can change the braking capability of all of the cars in the simulation to include Brake Retainers. These cause the brake cylinder on a car to retain some fixed pressure when the train brakes are released; this causes the car to produce a constant braking force. If this option is not checked, then brake retainers are only found on cars that have an appropriate entry, as described here, in their .wag files.

6.1.7 Brake pipe charging rate

The *Brake Pipe Charging Rate (PSI/Second)* value controls the charging rate of the main air brake pipe. Increasing the value will reduce the time required to recharge the train (i.e. when releasing the brakes after a brake application), while decreasing the value will slow the charging rate. See also the paragraphs on the OR implementation of the braking system.

6.1.8 Language

OR is an internationalized package. It supports many languages, and others can be added by following the instructions contained in the "Localization Manual" which can be found in the Open Rails Source/Trunk/Documentation folder.

When "System" is selected, OR automatically selects the language of the hosting Windows, if the language is available.

6.1.9 Pressure unit

The player can select the unit of measure of brake pressure in the HUD display (see here for HUD information).

When set to "automatic" the unit of measure is the same as that used in the cabview of the locomotive.

6.1.10 Other units

This selects the units displayed for length, mass, pressure, etc. in the F5 HUD of the simulation.

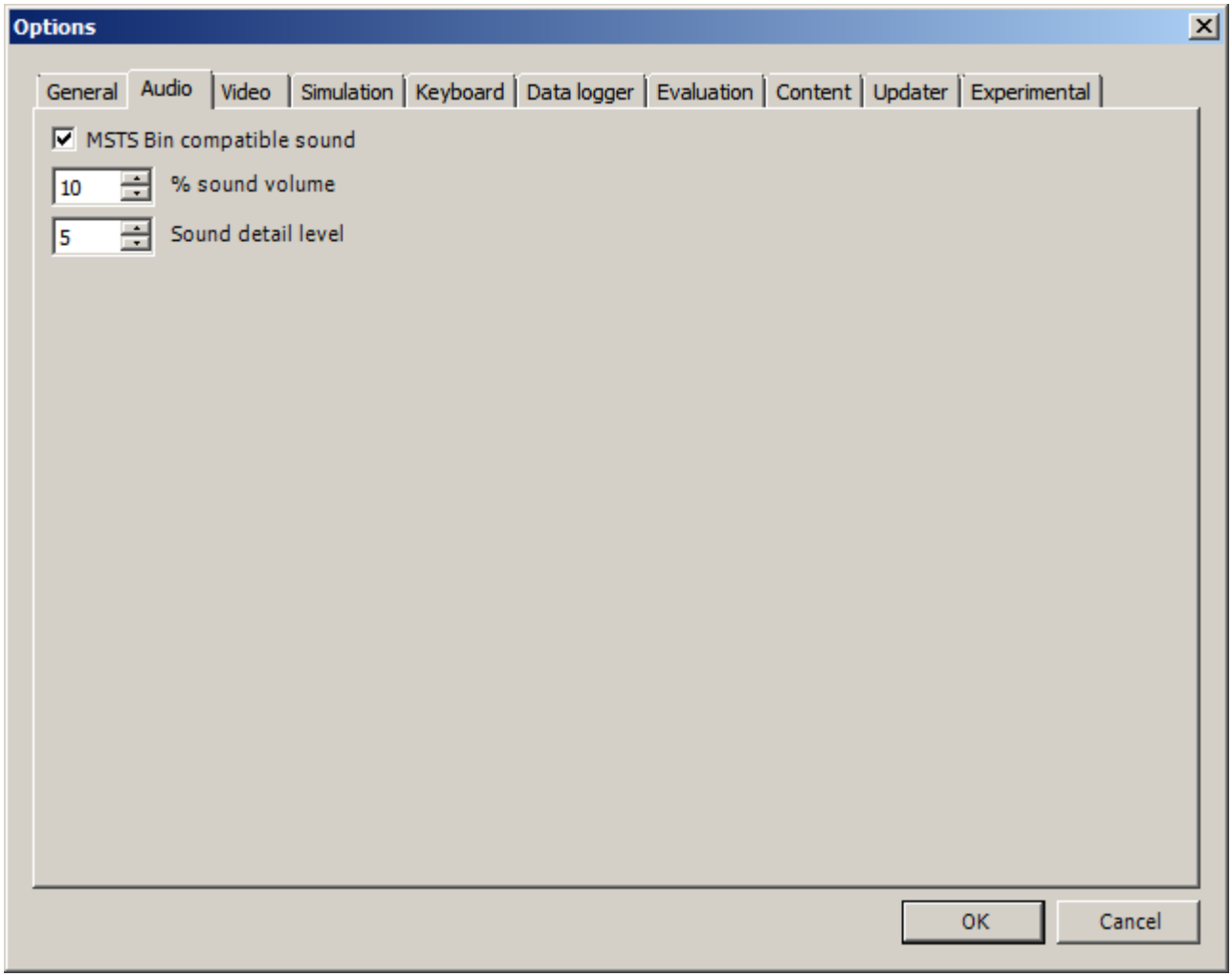
The option "Player's Location" sets the units according to the Windows "Language and Region" settings on the player's computer.

The option "Route" set the units based on the data in the route files. The other options are self-explanatory.

The F5 HUD uses the abbreviations "stn" for short tons (2000 lb.) and "t" or "tn" for metric tons (tonnes).

Note that the units displayed by the F4 Track Monitor (e.g. velocity and distance) are always based on data read from the route files.

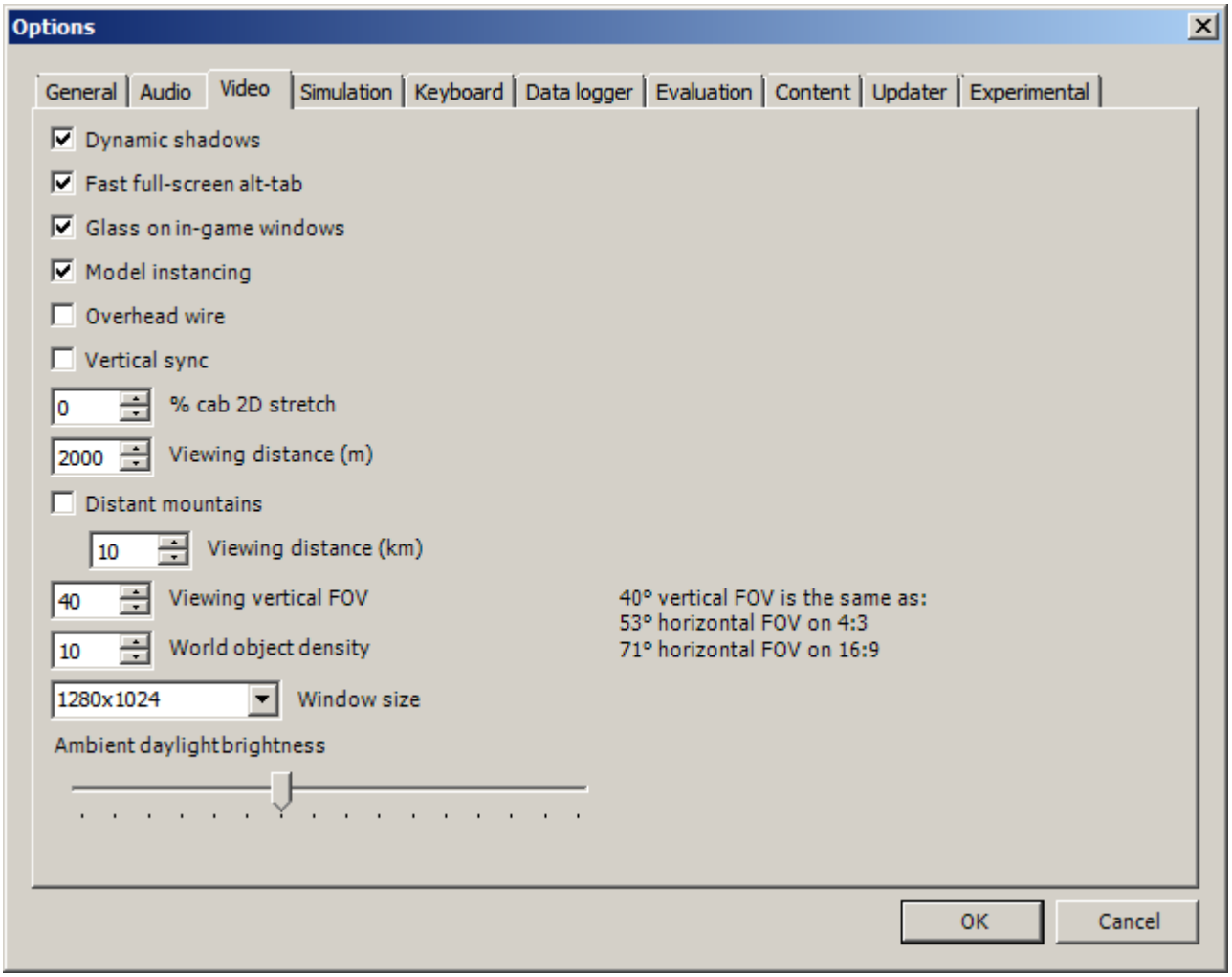
6.2 Audio Options



Except for very slow computers, it is suggested that you leave the “MSTS Bin compatible sound” option checked and set the Sound detail level to 5.

The “% sound volume” scroll button allows adjustment of the volume of OR sound.

6.3 Video Options



6.3.1 Dynamic shadows

With this option it is possible to enable or disable the display of dynamic shadows. Disabling can be helpful if low frame rates are experienced.

6.3.2 Fast full-screen alt+tab

When this option is selected, and OR is running full-screen, pressing Alt+Tab leaves OR full-screen and running, and allows the Dispatcher Window to be shown in front of it. If this option is not selected, OR is minimized. The Dispatcher Window option must also be selected and the Dispatcher Window started with Ctrl+9 to display the Dispatcher Window. Each successive press of Alt+Tab will toggle between the Dispatcher window and the OR window

6.3.3 Glass on in-game windows

When this option is checked, the in-game windows are displayed in a semitransparent mode.

6.3.4 Model instancing

When the option is checked, in cases where multiple instances of the same object have to be drawn, only a single draw call is sent to the GPU. This means lower CPU load. It is suggested to always check this option.

6.3.5 Overhead wire

This option will enable or disable display of the overhead wire.

6.3.6 Vertical sync

When this option is selected, the OR update rate cannot be higher than the monitor vertical sync frequency (typically 60 Hz). This reduces CPU energy consumption in fast PCs.

6.3.7 % Cab 2D Stretch

OR manages not only cab interiors using 2D images in a MSTS-compatible way, but also supports 3D models. Most 2D cab images follow MSTS practice, being 1024 x 768 pixels to suit monitors with a 4:3 aspect ratio.

So, the problem arises - how to display these 4:3 cabs on a 16:9 or 16:10 monitor?

One possibility is to stretch these images horizontally to match other aspect ratios, as shown in the image below.

To respect the proportions however, by default OR does no stretching and shows the full width of the cab interior, thus losing a portion from the top and bottom of the image. You can use the *Up* and *Down* Arrow keys to pan and reveal these missing portions.

Therefore the setting for *% Cab 2D Stretch* has a default value of 0 providing no stretching and a maximum value of 100 which stretches the picture so as to cover the complete display. Intermediate values provide a blend of panning and stretching.

6.3.8 Viewing distance

This option defines the maximum distance at which terrain is displayed. At higher distances Distant Mountains will be displayed (see below). This parameter increases CPU and GPU load. Also, some routes are optimized for the standard MSTS maximum viewing distance (2000m).

6.3.9 Distant Mountains

Distant mountains are supported in a way that is compatible with MSTS. Distant mountains are present in the route if it has a folder called LO_TILE. You may turn the feature on by checking the "Distant Mountains" checkbox. In addition to MSTS capability, you can select the viewing distance of the distant mountains.

6.3.10 Viewing vertical FOV

This value defines the vertical angle of the world that is shown. Higher values correspond roughly to a zoom out effect. The default is 45 degrees.

6.3.11 World object density

This value can be set from 0 to 10; when 10 is selected, all objects defined in the route files are displayed. Lower values do not display some categories of objects.

6.3.12 Window size

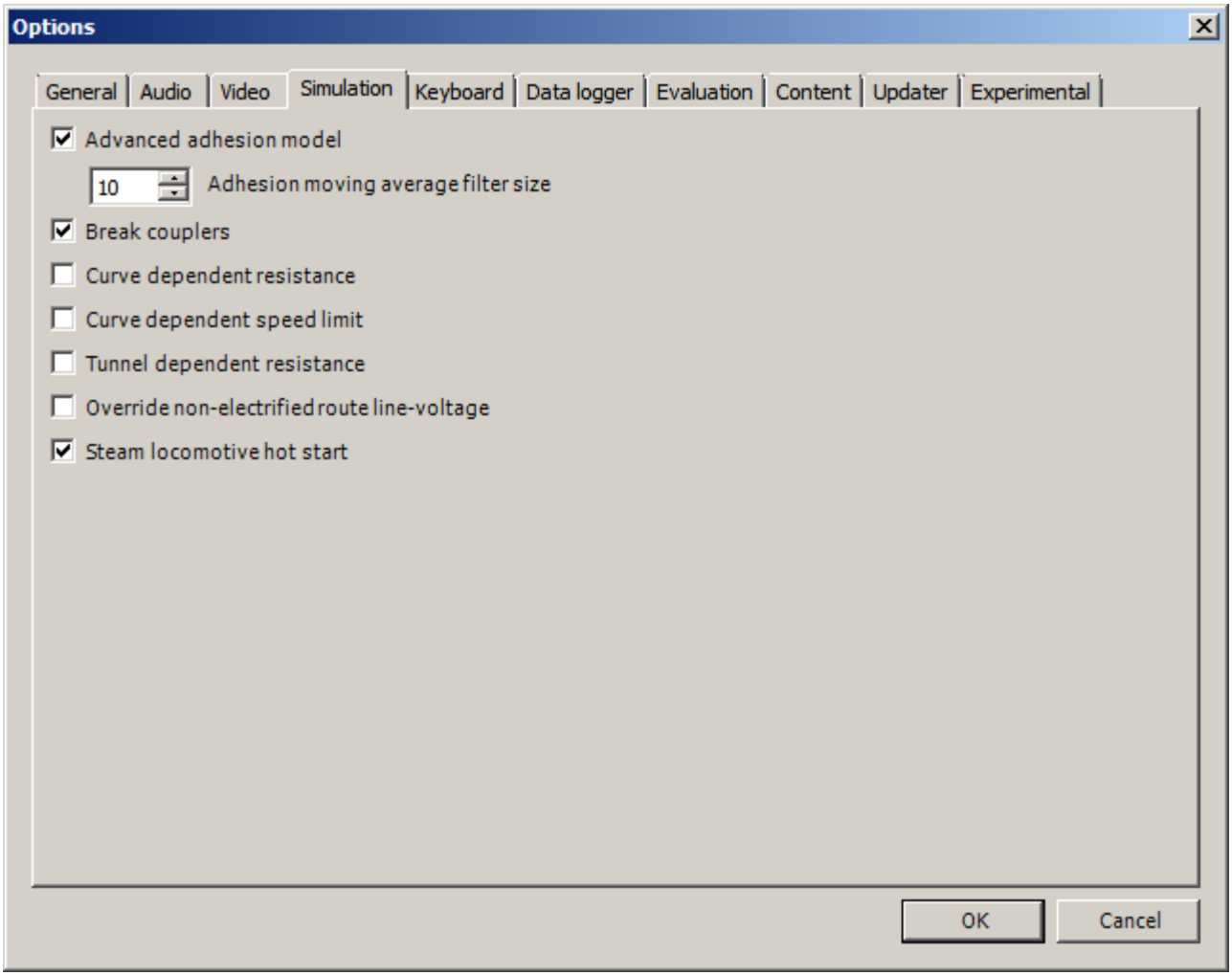
This pair of values defines the size of the OR window. There are some preconfigured pairs of values, however you may also manually enter a different size to be used.

6.3.13 Ambient daylight brightness

With this slider you can set the daylight brightness.

6.4 Simulation Options

The majority of these options define train physics behavior.



6.4.1 Advanced adhesion model

OR supports two adhesion models: the basic one is similar to the one used by MSTS, while the advanced one is based on a model more similar to reality.

For more information read the section on "Adhesion Models" later in this manual.

6.4.2 Adhesion moving average filter size

The computations related to adhesion are passed through a moving average filter. Higher values cause smoother operation, but also less responsiveness. 10 is the default filter size.

6.4.3 Break couplers

When this option is selected, if the force on a coupler is higher than the threshold set in the .eng file, the coupler breaks and the train is divided into two parts.

6.4.4 Curve dependent resistance

When this option is selected, resistance to train motion is influenced by the radius of the curve on which the train is running. This option is described in detail here (theory) and also here (OR application).

6.4.5 Curve dependent speed limit

When this option is selected, OR computes whether the train is running too fast on curves, and if so a warning message is logged and displayed on the monitor. This option is described in detail here (theory) and also here (OR application).

6.4.6 Tunnel dependent resistance

When this option is selected, OR takes into account the fact that trains in tunnels are subject to higher air resistance, and therefore need a higher effort at invariant speed. This option is described in detail here (theory) and here (OR application).

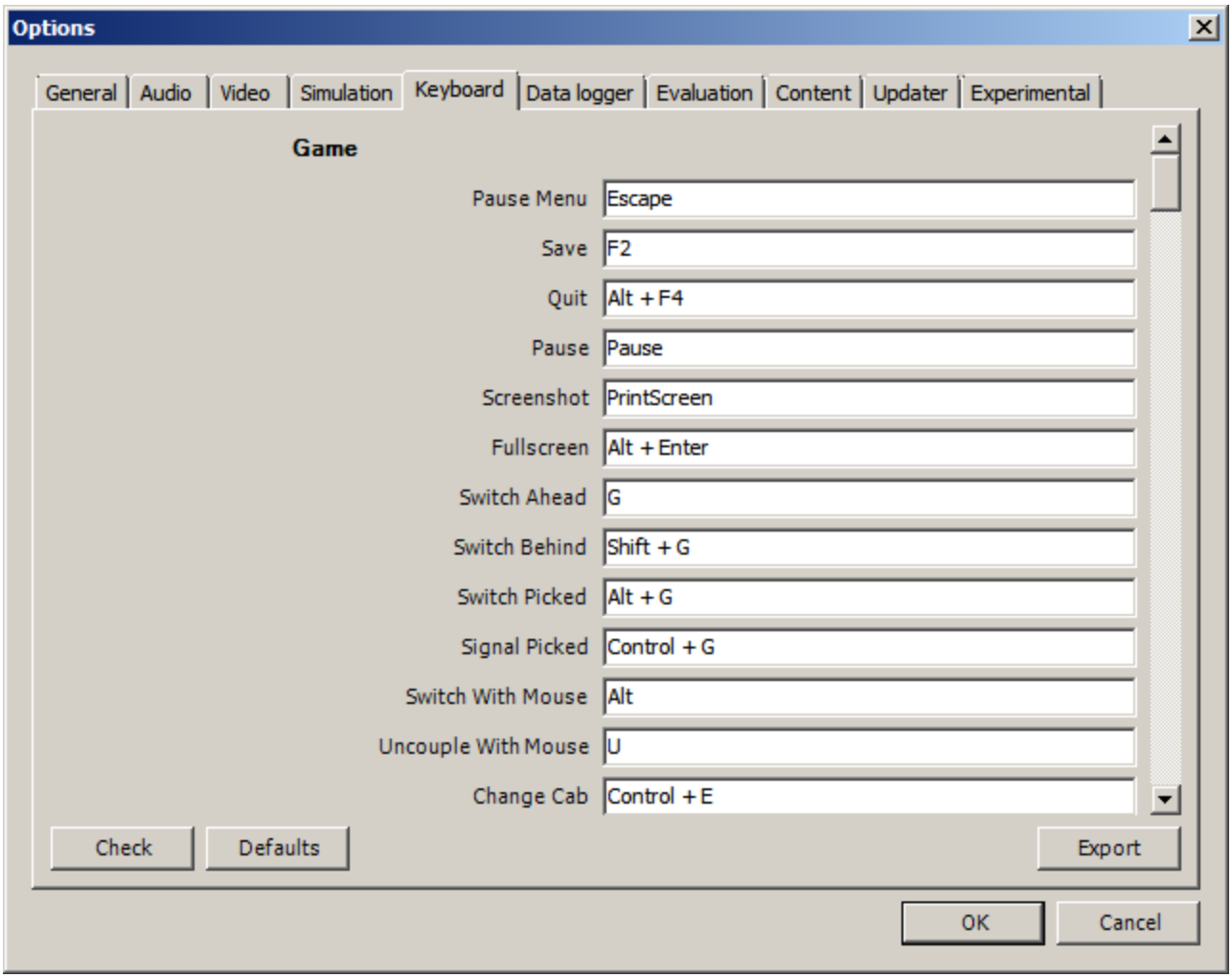
6.4.7 Override non-electrified route line-voltage

This option allows running (in a non-prototypical way) electric locomotives on non-electrified routes.

6.4.8 Steam locomotive hot start

This option allows starting the game with the boiler water temperature already at a value that allows running the locomotive. If the option is not selected, you will have to wait until the water temperature reaches a high enough value.

6.5 Keyboard Options



In this panel you will find listed the keyboard keys that are associated with all OR commands.

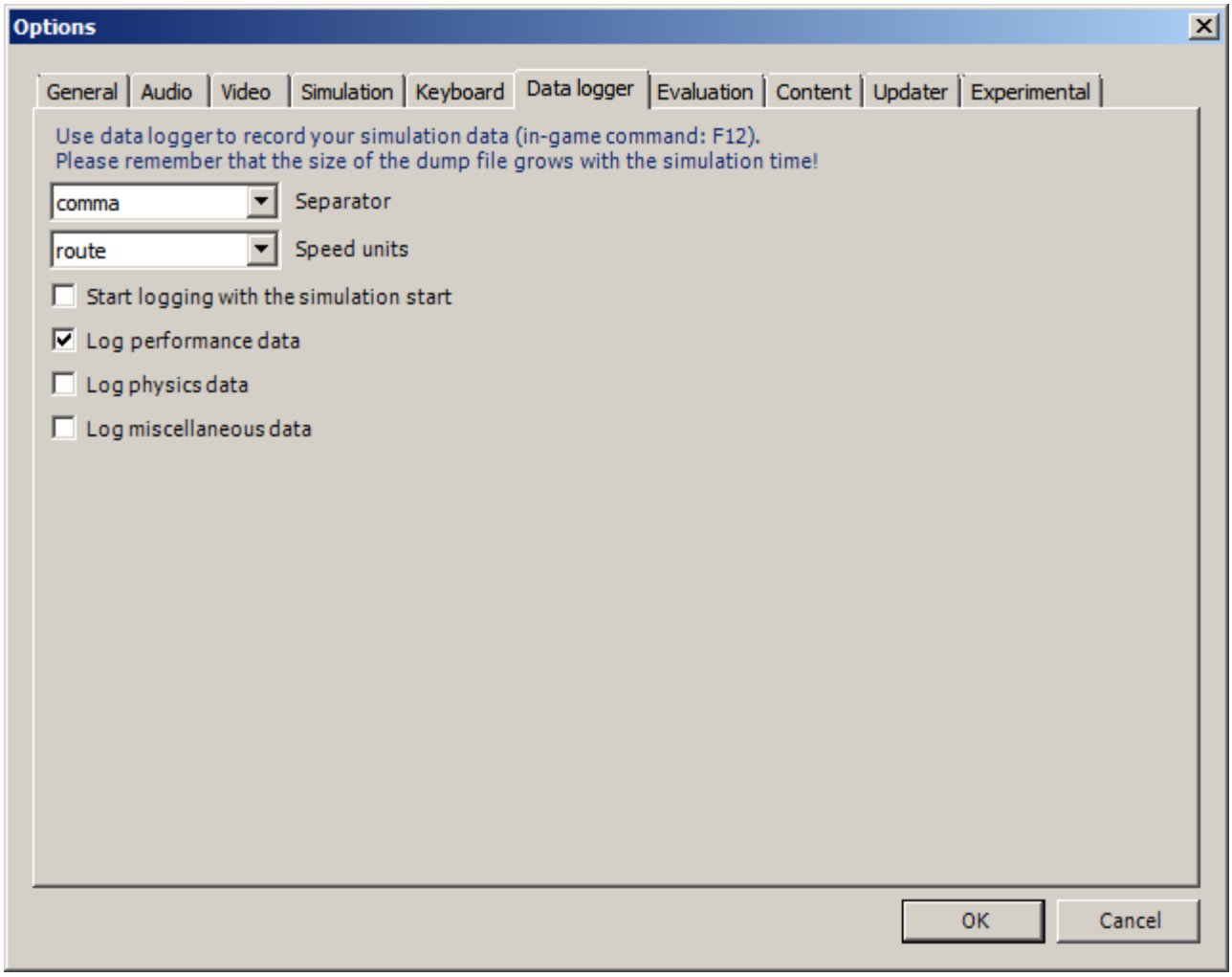
You can modify them by clicking on a field and pressing the new desired key. Three symbols will appear at the right of the field: with the first one you validate the change, with the second one you cancel it, with the third one you return to the default value.

By clicking on “Check” OR verifies that the changes made are compatible, that is, that there is no key that is used for more than one command.

By clicking on “Defaults” all changes that were made are reset, and the default values are reloaded.

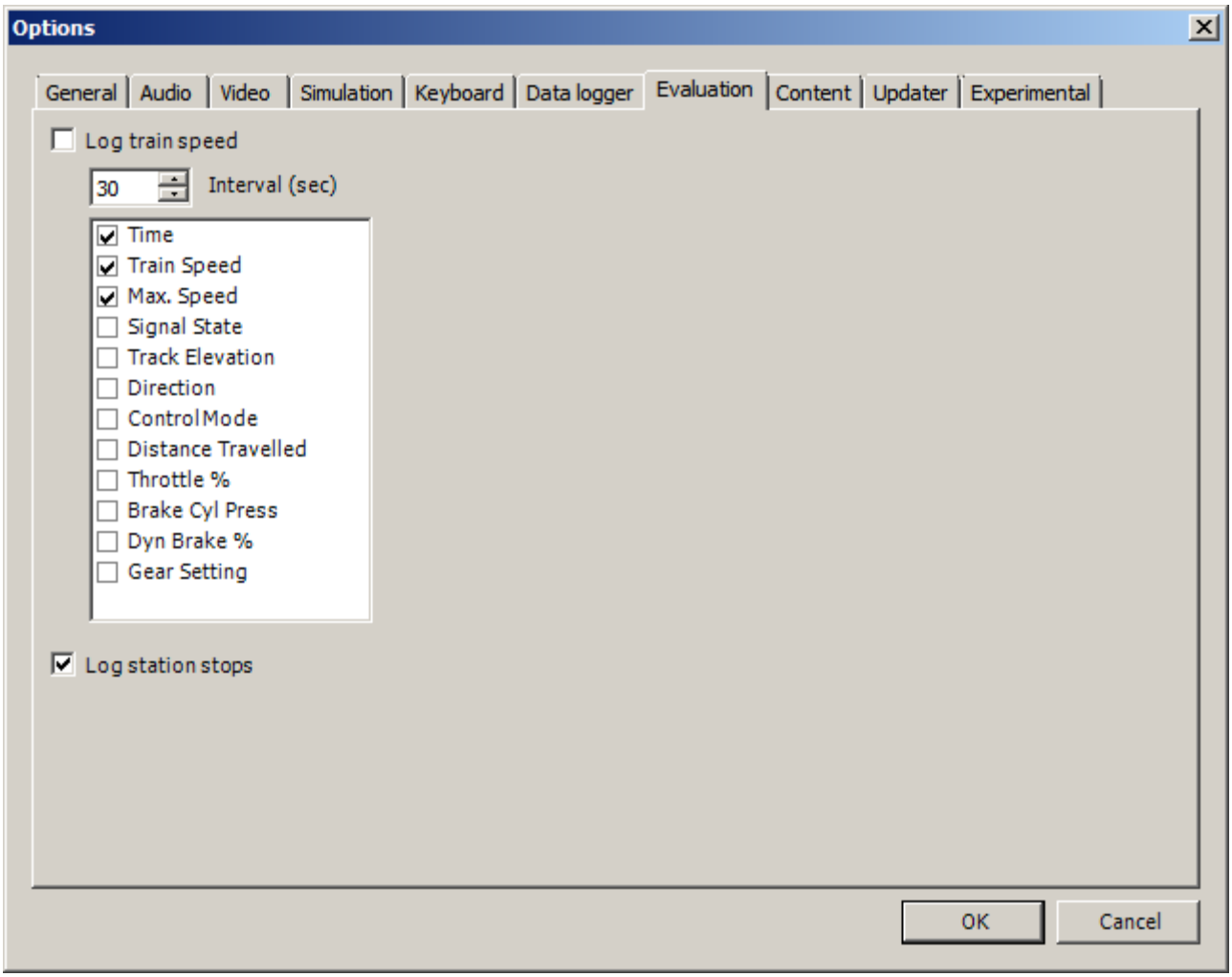
By clicking on “Export” a printable text file “Open Rails Keyboard.txt” is generated on the desktop, showing all links between commands and keys.

6.6 Data Logger Options

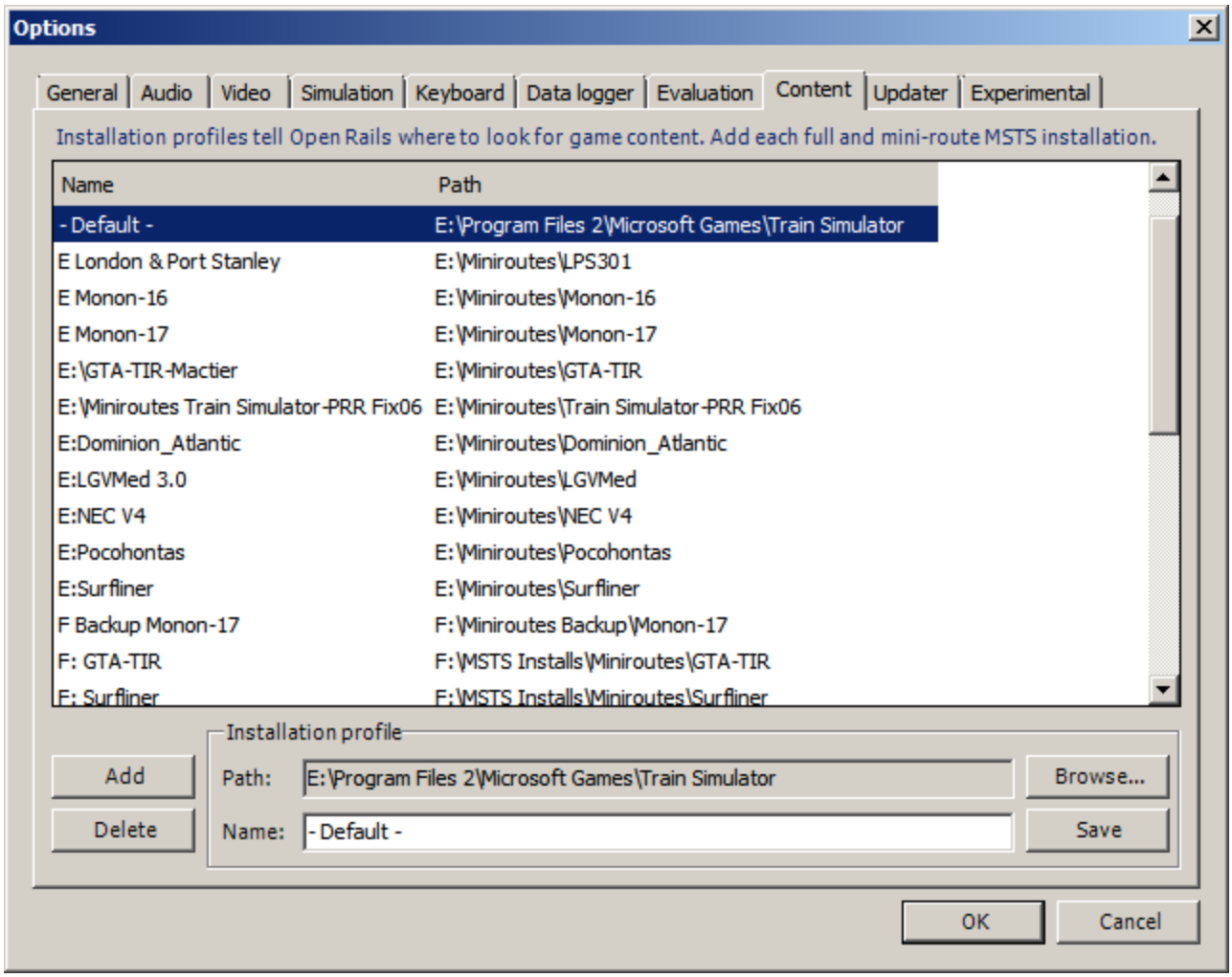


By selecting the option “Start logging with the simulation start” or by pressing F12 a file with the name dump.csv is generated in the configured Open Rails logging folder (placed on the Desktop by default). This file can be used for later analysis.

6.7 Evaluation Options



When data logging is started (see preceding paragraph), data selected in this panel are logged, allowing a later evaluation on how the activity was executed by the player.



6.8 Content Options

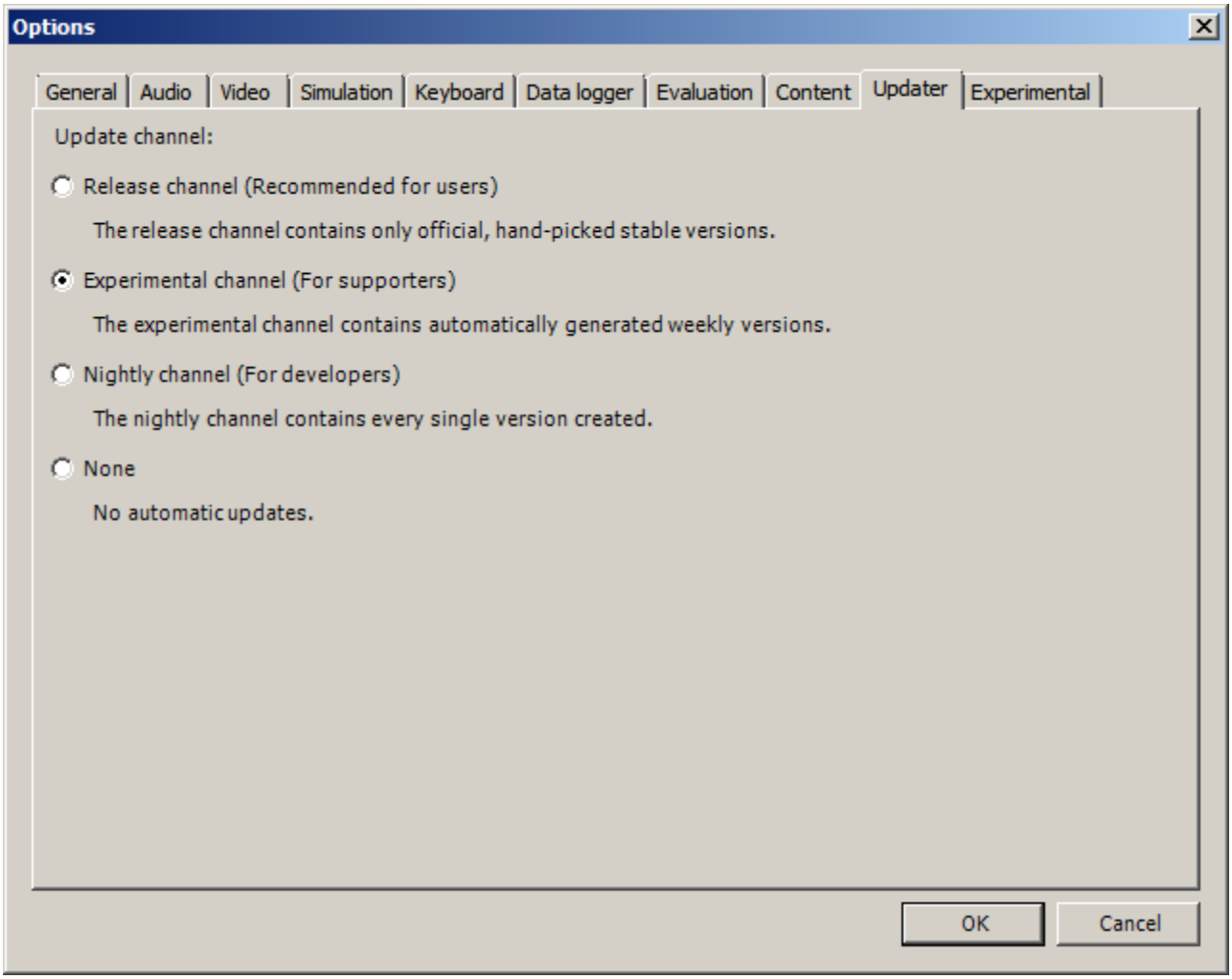
This window allows you to add, remove or modify access to additional MSTS installations or miniroute installations for Open Rails. Installations located on other drives, or on a USB key, can be added even if they are not always available.

Click on the “Add” button, and locate the desired installation. OR will automatically enter a proposed name in the “Name:” window that will appear in the “Installation set:” window on the main menu form. Modify the name if desired, then Click “Save” to add the new path and name to Open Rails. Then click “OK” to return to Open Rails.

To remove an entry (note that this does not remove the installation itself!) select the entry in the window, and click “Delete”, then “OK” to close the window. To modify an entry, use the “Browse…” button to access the location; make the necessary changes, and then “Save” the changes.

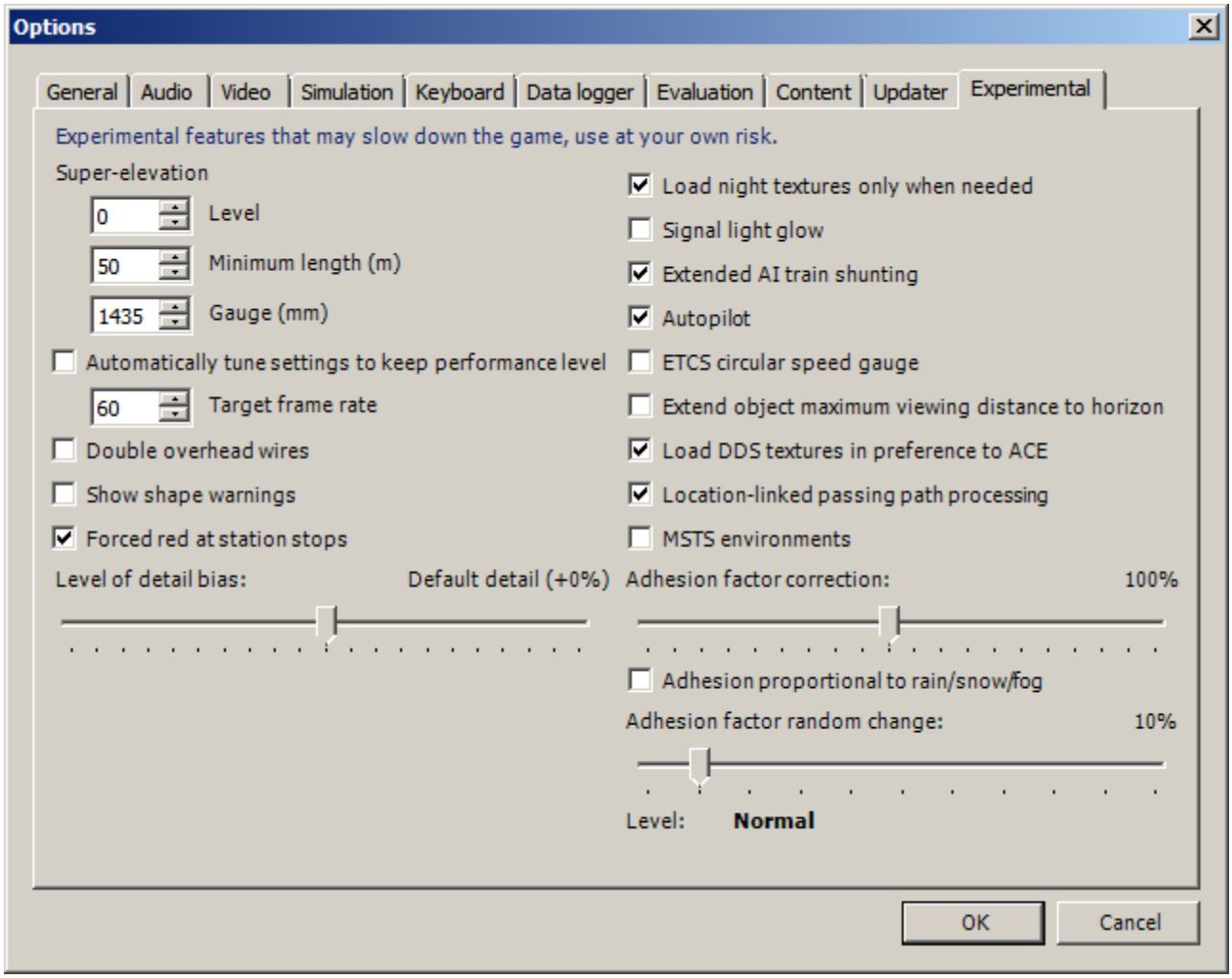
6.9 Updater Options

These options control which OR version update channel is active (see also here). The various options available are self-explanatory.



6.10 Experimental Options

Some experimental features being introduced in Open Rails may be turned on and off through the "Experimental" tab of the Options window, as described below:



6.10.1 Super-elevation

If the value set for "Level" is greater than zero, OR supports super elevation for long curved tracks. The value "Minimum Length" determines the length of the shortest curve to have super-elevation. You need to choose the correct gauge for your route, otherwise some tracks may not be properly shown.

When super-elevation is selected, two viewing effects occur at runtime:

1. If an external camera view is selected, the tracks and the running train will be shown inclined towards the internal part of the curve.
2. When the cab view is selected, the cab itself will be shown as inclined towards the internal part of the curve, while the external world will be shown as inclined towards the external part; the ratio of these two inclinations can be changed at runtime by repeatedly pressing Alt+R. Four possible ratios are possible.

OR implements super elevated tracks using Dynamic Tracks. You can change the appearance of tracks by creating a TrProfile.sft in the TrackProfiles folder of your route. The document “How to Provide Track Profiles for Open Rails Dynamic Track.docm” describing the creation of track profiles can be found in the OpenRails /Trunk/Source/Documentation folder. Forum discussions about track profiles can also be found here:

http://www.elvastower.com/forums/index.php?/topic/21119-superelevation/page__view__findpost__p__115247.

6.10.2 Automatically tune settings to keep performance level

When this option is selected OR attempts to maintain the selected Target frame rate FPS (Frames per second). To do this it decreases or increases the viewing distance of the standard terrain. If the option is selected, also select the desired FPS in the “Target frame rate” window.

6.10.3 Double overhead wires

MSTS uses a single wire for electrified routes; you may check this box so that OR will show the two overhead wires that are more common.

6.10.4 Show shape warnings

When this option is selected, when OR is loading the shape (.s) files it will report errors in syntax and structure (even if these don't cause runtime errors) in the Log file “OpenRailsLogFile.txt” on the desktop.

6.10.5 Forced red at station stops

In case a signal is present beyond a station platform and in the same track section (no switches in between), OR will set the signal to red until the train has stopped and then hold it as red from that time up to two minutes before starting time. This is useful in organizing train meets and takeovers, however it does not always correspond to reality nor to MSTS operation. So with this option the player can decide which behavior the start signal will have. This option is checked by default. Unchecking the option has an effect on simulation behavior only if no Timetable mode operation is under way.

6.10.6 Load night textures only when needed

As a default OR loads night textures together with the day textures at daytime. When this option is selected, to reduce loading time and reduce memory used, night textures are not loaded in the daytime and are only loaded at sunset (if the game continues through sunset time).

6.10.7 Signal light glow

When this option is set, a glowing effect is added to signal semaphores when seen at distance, so that they are visible at a greater distance. There are routes where this effect has already been natively introduced; for these, this option is not recommended.

6.10.8 Extended AI train shunting

When this option is selected, further AI train shunting functions are available. This allows for more interesting and varied activities. If an activity is run which makes use of these function, this option must be selected. This option has no effect in Timetable mode.

The following additional shunting functions are available:

- AI train couples to static consist and restarts with it.
- AI train couples to player or AI train and becomes part of it; coupled AI train continues on its path.
- AI train couples to player or AI train and leaves to it its cars; coupled and coupling train continue on their path.
- AI train couples to player or AI train and “steals” its cars; coupled and coupling train continue on their path.

- AI train uncouples any number of its cars; the uncoupled part becomes a static consist. With the same function it is possible to couple any number of cars from a static consist.

for content developers: A more detailed description of this feature can be found under Extended AI Train Shunting under Open Rails Train Operation.

for content developers: Selecting this option also enables the waiting points to declare an absolute time-of-day instead of a waiting point duration. A more detailed description of this feature can be found in the related paragraph in the chapter "Open Rails Train Operation".

6.10.9 Autopilot

With this option enabled and when in activity mode, it is possible to stay in the cab of the player train, but to let Open Rails move the train, respecting path, signals, speeds and station stops.

It is possible to switch the player train between autopilot mode and player driven mode at run time. The Autopilot mode is described here.

6.10.10 ETCS circular speed gauge

When this option is selected, it is possible to add to the cabview a circular speed gauge accordingly to the European standard train control system ETCS.

For content developers: The gauge is added by the insertion of a block like the following into the .cvf file:

```
Digital (
	Type ( SPEEDOMETER DIGITAL )
	Style ( NEEDLE )
	Position ( 160 255 56 56 )
	ScaleRange ( 0 250 )
	Units ( KM_PER_HOUR )
)
```

6.10.11 Extend object maximum viewing distance to horizon

With this option selected, all objects viewable up to the viewing distance defined in the Video Options are displayed. As a default ORTS only displays objects up to 2000 m. distance. Selecting this option improves display quality but may reduce frame rate.

6.10.12 Load DDS textures in preference to ACE

Open Rails is capable of loading both ACE and DDS textures. If only one of the two is present, it is loaded. If both are present, the ACE texture is loaded unless this option has been selected.

6.10.13 Location-linked passing path processing

When this option is NOT selected, ORTS acts similarly to MSTS. That is, if two trains meet whose paths share some track section in a station, but are both provided with passing paths as defined with the MSTS Activity Editor, one of them will run through the passing path, therefore allowing the meet. Passing paths in this case are only available to the trains whose path has passing paths.

When this option is selected, ORTS makes available to all trains the main and the passing path of the player train. Moreover, it takes into account the train length in selecting which path to assign to a train in case of a meet.

for content developers: A more detailed description of this feature can be found under Location-Linked Passing Path Processing in the chapter “Open Rails Train Operation”.

6.10.14 MSTS Environments

By default ORTS uses its own environment files and algorithms, e.g. for night sky and for clouds.

With this option selected, ORTS applies the MSTS environment files. This includes support of Kosmos environments, even if the final effect may be different from the current MSTS one.

6.10.15 Adhesion factor correction

The adhesion is multiplied by this percentage factor. Therefore lower values of the slider reduce adhesion and cause more frequent wheel slips and therefore a more difficult, but more challenging driving experience.

6.10.16 Level of detail bias

This option is an expansion (and replacement) of an earlier experimental option: "Always use highest level of detail". The new option allows you to increase or reduce the level of detail generally shown independently of the viewing distance and world object density.

6.10.17 Adhesion proportional to rain/snow/fog

When this option is selected, adhesion becomes dependent on the intensity of rain and snow and the density of fog. Intensities and density can be modified at runtime by the player.

6.10.18 Adhesion factor random change

This factor randomizes the adhesion factor corrector by the entered percentage. The higher the value, the higher the adhesion variations.

7 Driving a Train

7.1 Game Loading

Once you have pressed “Start”, Open Rails loads and processes all the data needed to run the game. During this phase, the route’s splash screen is shown. If the same session was loaded previously, a bar showing loading progress is shown at the bottom of the display. During loading, if logging is selected, the log file OpenRailsLog.txt will already begin storing data.

7.2 Entering the Simulation

At the end of the loading phase, you are in the cab of the train you will drive.(Note: some newer locomotives have experimental 3D cabs - if no cab interior display appears, then type Alt+1 to display the cab interior.) Depending on the configuration of the activity (in case of activity mode), your train will be in motion or stopped. In this second case, if the train is driven by an electric locomotive, as the first operation you have to raise the pantograph (key P). To look around in the simulation, you can select different views using the keyboard, as described in “Changing the View” below.

7.3 Open Rails Driving Controls

Open Rails follows MSTS very closely, providing controls to drive steam, electric and diesel locomotives, both on their own or working together, but also offers additional capabilities.

A very wide range of systems and instruments specified in the ENG and CVF files is supported.

To control the train, you have at your disposal a set of keyboard commands that is equivalent to those of MSTS, plus some new ones. You can get a printable version of the command set as described in paragraph 6.5 (Keyboard options), or you can press F1 to immediately get the scrollable F1 Information Window as shown and described below.

Alternatively, you can operate the cabview controls by mouse click (buttons) and mouse drag (levers and rotary switches).

7.3.1 Throttle Control

Steam locomotives have a continuous throttle or regulator, but many diesel and electric locomotives have a notched throttle which moves only in steps. To avoid jerks, some of these steps may be "smooth", where the power is gradually and automatically adjusted to achieve the setting.

7.3.2 Dynamic Braking

Dynamic braking is the use of the traction motors of a locomotive (electric or diesel-electric) as generators to slow the train. Initially, dynamic braking was applied in mountainous territory where conventional freight-car brakes were prone to overheating on long downgrades. It was also limited to speeds above 10mph. Dynamic braking controls are usually notched.

In OR, the dynamic brake (controlled by the keys , and .) is not available unless the throttle is fully closed; similarly the throttle is not available unless the dynamic brake is fully released (off).

As defined in the CVF file, the tractive and braking forces may be shown on two different instruments, on one instrument with two needles or on a single instrument where the braking is shown as a negative value.

7.3.3 Combined Control

Some locomotives are fitted with a "combined control" where a single lever is used to provide throttle and brake control together, with negative throttle positions used to apply the brake. The brake element may be either dynamic or conventional train brakes.

There may be a delay changing between throttle and brake operation, representing the time required to change the operation of the traction motors from motors to generators.

7.3.4 Refill

Diesel and steam locomotives must refill their supplies of fuel occasionally, perhaps daily, but steam locomotives need water more frequently and have a range of little more than 100 miles. Use the "T" key to refill with fuel or water.

If the locomotive or tender is alongside the pickup point, e.g. a water tank, then the refilling takes place as the key is held down. If the locomotive is further away, then the distance to the nearest pickup is given instead.

7.3.5 Specific Features to Optimize Locomotive Driving

You are encouraged to read the chapter on Open Rails Physics to optimize your driving capabilities and to achieve a realistic feeling of what happens in a real moving train.

7.3.6 Examples of Driving Controls

for content developers:

For continuous throttle, see MSTS model `...\TRAINS\TRAINSET\ACELA\acela.eng`

For a notched non-smooth throttle, see `...\TRAINS\TRAINSET\GP38\gp38.eng`

For a combined throttle and dynamic brake, see `...\TRAINS\TRAINSET\DASH9\dash9.eng`

For a combined throttle and train brake, see
`...\MSTS\TRAINS\TRAINSET\SERIES7000\series7000.eng`

7.4 Driving aids

Open Rails provides a large number of driving aids, which support the player during train operation.

7.4.1 Basic Head Up Display (HUD)

By pressing F5 you get some important data displayed at the top left of the display in the so-called Head Up Display (HUD). If you want the HUD to disappear, press F5 again.

The HUD has 6 different pages. The basic page is shown at game start. To sequentially switch to the other pages press Shift+F5. After having cycled through all of the extended HUD pages, the basic page is displayed again.

To hide or redisplay the current extended HUD data while continuing to show the basic HUD, press Alt+F5.

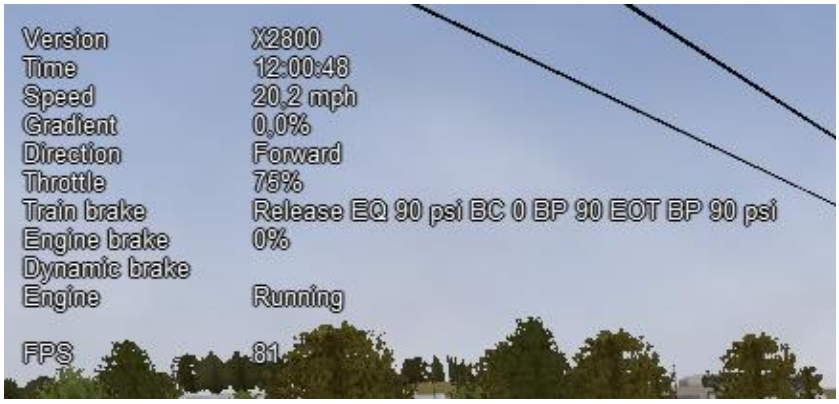
The basic page shows fundamental information. The other pages go into more detail, and are used mainly for debugging or to get deeper information on how OR behaves. They are listed in the "Analysis tools" subchapter.

The following information is displayed in the basic display:

- Version = The version of the Open Rails software you are running
- Time = Game time of the Activity
- Speed = the speed in Miles/Hr. or Kilometers/Hr.
- Gradient = Route gradient in % in that point
- Direction = Position of the Reverser - Electric, Diesel and Steam.
- Throttle = Displays the current position of the throttle, expressed as a percentage of full throttle. Throttle correctly uses Notches and configured % of power for Diesel engines or % of throttle for steam engines.
- Train Brake = Shows the current position of the train brake system and the pressure value of the train brakes. Braking correctly reflects the braking system used; hold/release, self- lapping or graduated release. The Train brake HUD line has two Brake Reservoir pressure numbers: the first is the Equalization Reservoir (EQ) and the second is the Brake Cylinder (BC) pressure. The two BP numbers report the brake pressure in the lead engine and in the last car of the train. The unit of measure used for brake pressure is defined by the option "Pressure unit".
- Engine Brake = percentage of independent engine brake. Not fully releasing the engine brake will affect train brake pressures.
- Dynamic brake = if engaged, shows % of dynamic brake
- Engine = shows the running status of the engine.
  In case of a gear-based engine, after the "Engine" line a "Gear" line appears displaying the actual gear. N means no gear inserted.
- FPS = Number of Frames rendered per second

If the Autopilot is active, an additional line will be shown.

An example of the basic HUD for Diesel locomotives:



7.4.2 Electric Locomotives – Additional information

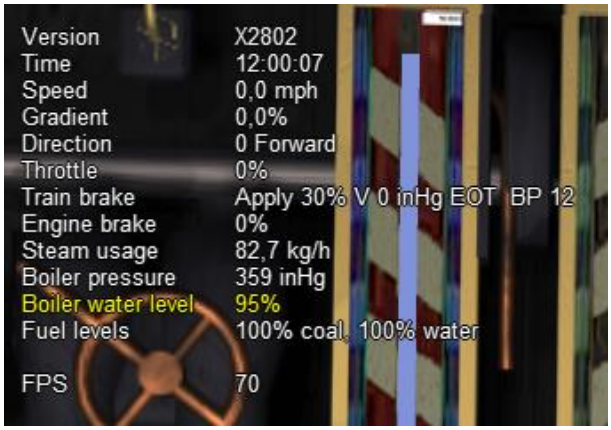
For electric locomotives information about the pantograph state is also shown and whether the locomotive has power (at least one pantograph raised) or not.

7.4.3 Steam Engine – Additional Information

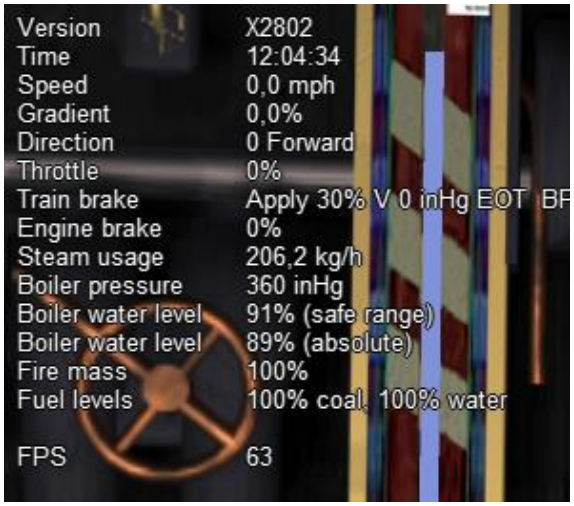
When using a steam engine the following additional information is displayed in the HUD:

- Steam Usage in lbs. /h, based on entirely new physics code developed by the Open Rails team. It is calculated by parsing the .eng file for the following parameters: number of cylinders; cylinder stroke; cylinder diameter; boiler volume; maximum boiler pressure; maximum boiler output; exhaust limit; and basic steam usage.
- Boiler pressure.
- Water level.
- Levels of coal and water in %.

An example of the basic HUD for Steam locomotives:



The default firing setting is automatic fireman. If manual firing is engaged (with Ctlr+F), then additional information is included:



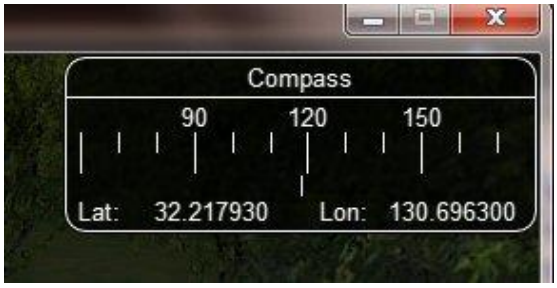
7.4.4 Multiplayer – Additional Information

If a multiplayer session is active, the following additional information is shown: the actual status of the player (dispatcher, helper or client), the number of players connected and the list of trains with their distances from the train of the player viewing the computer.

7.4.5 Compass Window

Open Rails software displays a compass that provides a heading based on the camera's direction together with its latitude and longitude.

To activate the compass window press the 0 (zero) key. To deactivate the compass window, press the 0 (zero) key a second time.



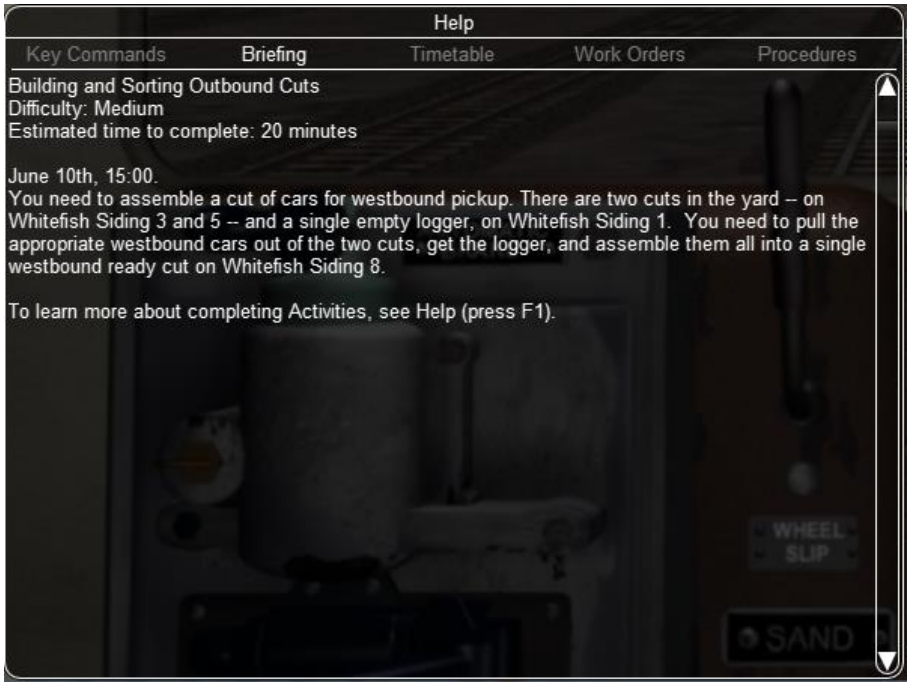
7.4.6 F1 Information Monitor

The F1 key displays the following set of panels in a tabbed format, selected by clicking with the mouse on the desired heading:

"Key Commands": displays the actions of the keyboard keys

Help
Key Commands
Briefing
Timetable
Work Orders
Procedures
Game Pause Menu Escape
Game Save F2
Game Quit Alt + F4
Game Pause Pause
Game Screenshot PrintScreen
Game Fullscreen Alt + INVIO
Game Switch Ahead G
Game Switch Behind Shift + G
Game Switch Picked Alt + G
Game Signal Picked Control + G
Game Switch With Mouse Alt
Game Uncouple With Mouse U
Game Change Cab Control + E
Game Request Control Alt + E
Game Multi Player Dispatcher Control + 9
Game Multi Player Texting Control + T
Game Switch Manual Mode Control + M

"Briefing": displays what the activity creator has entered as information to be provided to the player about the activity:


Help
Key Commands
Briefing
Timetable
Work Orders
Procedures
Building and Sorting Outbound Cuts
Difficulty: Medium
Estimated time to complete: 20 minutes
June 10th, 15:00.
You need to assemble a cut of cars for westbound pickup. There are two cuts in the yard -- on Whitefish Siding 3 and 5 -- and a single empty logger, on Whitefish Siding 1. You need to pull the appropriate westbound cars out of the two cuts, get the logger, and assemble them all into a single westbound ready cut on Whitefish Siding 8.
To learn more about completing Activities, see Help (press F1).

"Timetable": shows the list of the station stops, if any, with scheduled and actual times of arrival and departure. During the activity the actual performance will be shown on the F10 Activity Monitor.

"Work Orders": if defined by the activity creator, lists the coupling and uncoupling operations to be performed. When an operation has been completed, the string "Done" appears in the last column:

"Procedures": basic instructions for driving trains in Open Rails.

7.4.7 F4 Track Monitor

This window, which is displayed by pressing F4, has two different layouts according the the train's control mode: "Auto Signal" mode, "Manual" mode or "Explorer" mode (it is strongly suggested to follow the link and read the related paragraph).

Auto Signal or Auto mode is the default mode when running activities or timetables.

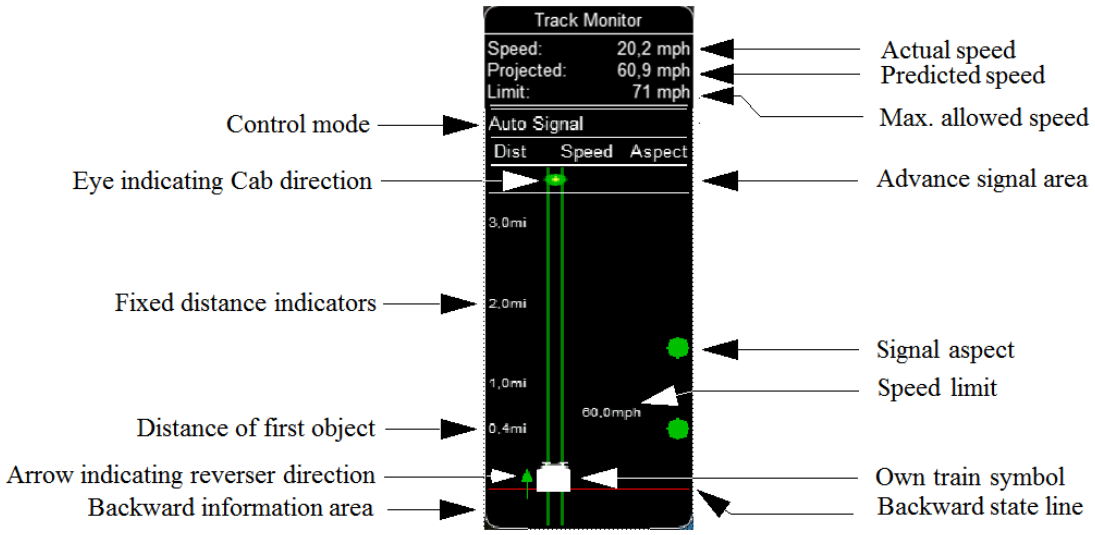
There are however two main cases where you must switch to "Manual" mode by pressing Ctrl+M:

- when the activity requires shunting without a predefined path
- when the train runs out of control due to SPAD ("Signal Passed At Danger" or passing a red signal) or exits the predefined path by error. If such situations occur you will usually get an emergency stop. To reset the emergency stop and then move to correct the error, you must first switch to Manual mode.

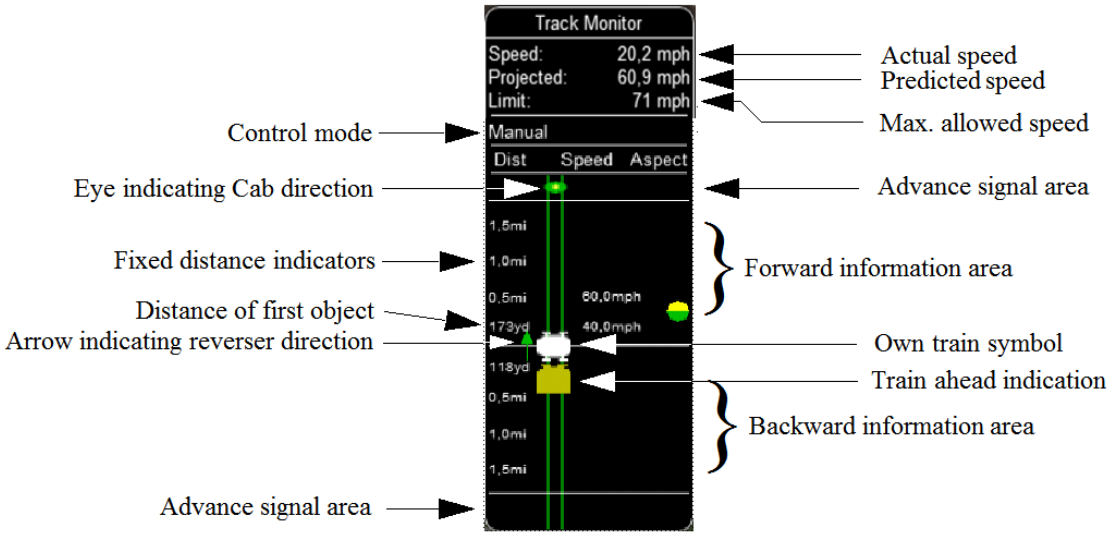
To switch to manual mode press Ctrl+M when the train is stopped.

You can return to auto mode by pressing Ctrl+M again when the head of the train is again on the correct path, with no SPAD situation. In standard situations you can also return to auto mode while the train is moving. Details are described in the paragraph of the link shown above.

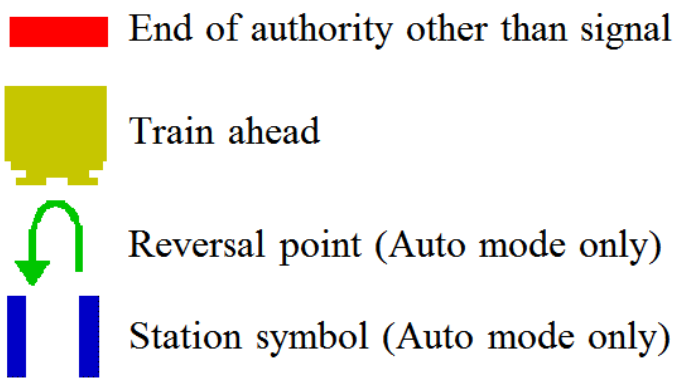
Track Monitor display in Auto Signal mode:



Track Monitor display in Manual mode / Explorer mode:



Track Monitor: Displayed Symbols (common for Auto and Manual mode unless indicated otherwise) :



Notes on the Track Monitor:

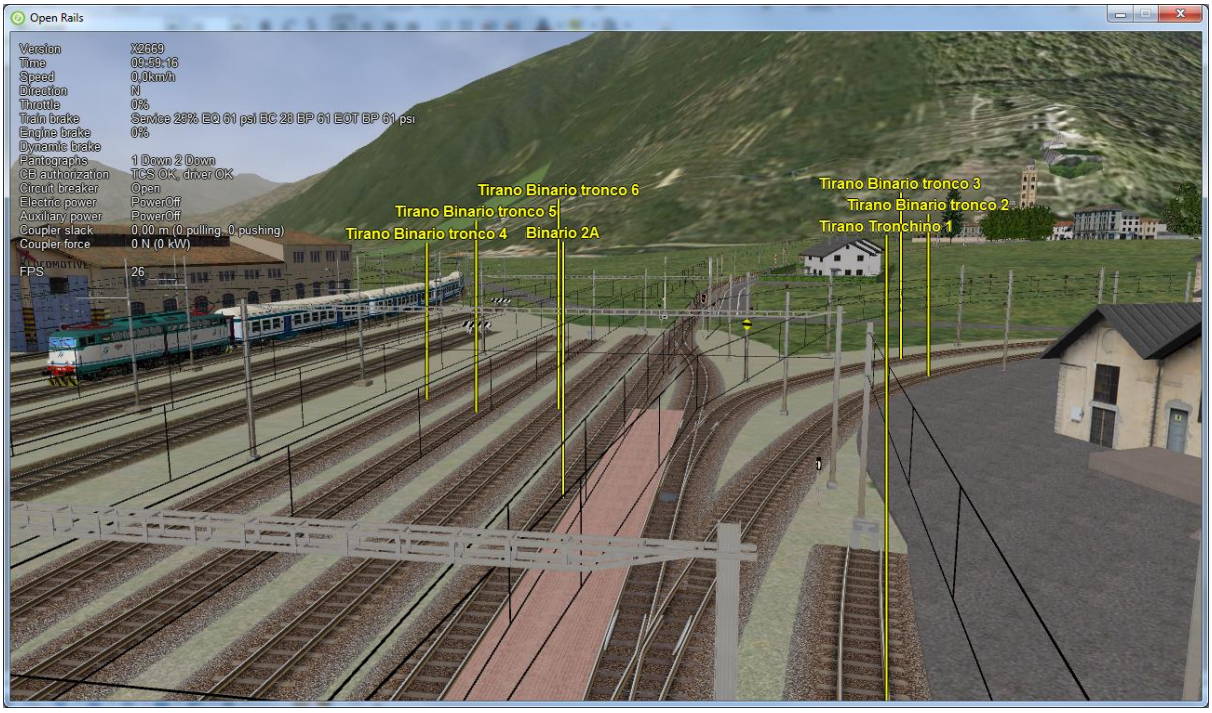
- Distance value is displayed for first object only, and only when within distance of the first fixed marker.
  Distance is not shown for next station stop.
- When no signal is within the normal display distance but a signal is found at a further distance, the signal aspect is displayed in the advance signal area. The distance to this signal is also shown.
  This only applies to signals, not to speedposts.
- For Auto mode :
  if the train is moving forward, the line separating the Backward information area is shown in red, and no Backward information is shown.
  If the train is moving backward, the separation line is shown in white, and Backward information is shown if available.
- For Manual mode :
  if the train is on its defined path (and toggling back to Auto control is possible), the own train symbol is shown in white, otherwise it is shown in red.
- The colour of the track-lines is an indication of the train's speed compared to the maximum allowed speed :
- Dark green : low speed, well below allowed maximum
- Light green : optimal speed, just below maximum
- Orange : slight overspeed but within safety margin
- Dark red : serious overspeed, danger of derailment or crashing

Note that the placement of the display objects with respect to the distance offset is indicative only. If multiple objects are placed at short intermediate distances, the offset in the display is increased such that the texts do not overlap. As a result, only the first object is always shown at the correct position, all other objects are as close to their position as allowed by other objects closer to the train.

7.4.8 F6 Siding and Platform Names

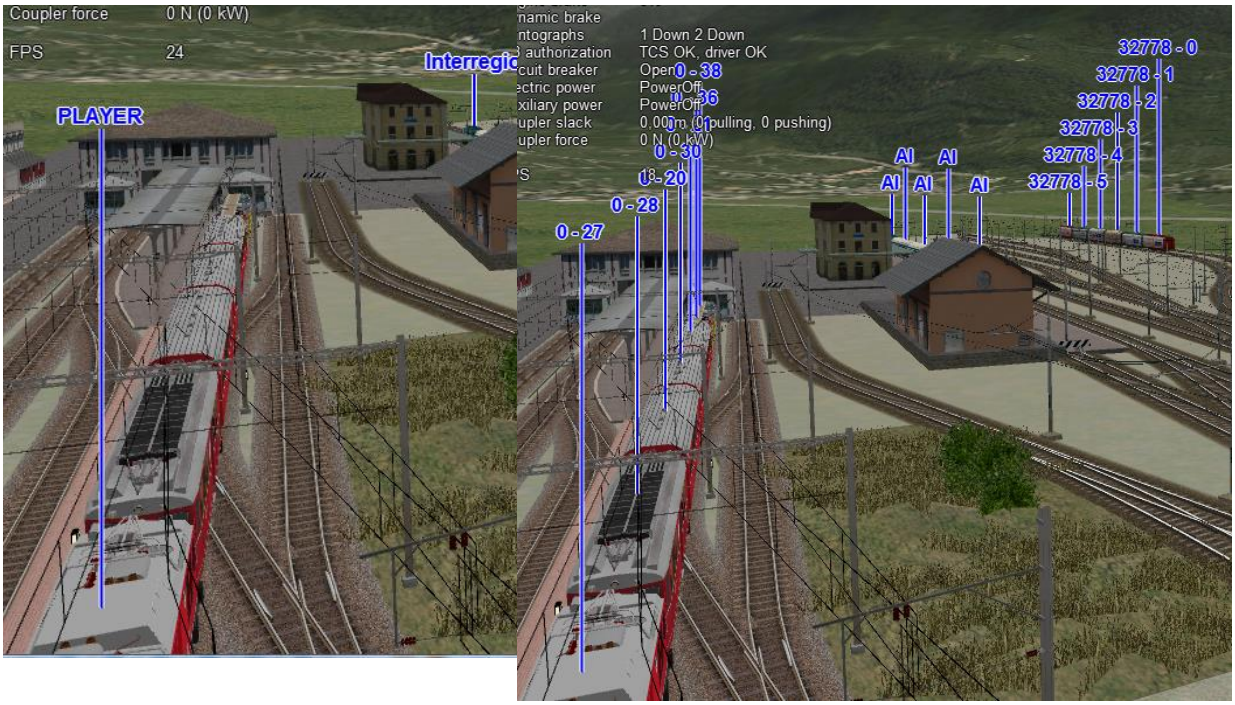
Hit the F6 key to bring up the siding and platform names within a region. These can be crowded so hitting Shift+F6 will cycle through showing platforms only, sidings only, and both.

Hitting F6 again removes both siding and platform names.



7.4.9 F7 Train Names

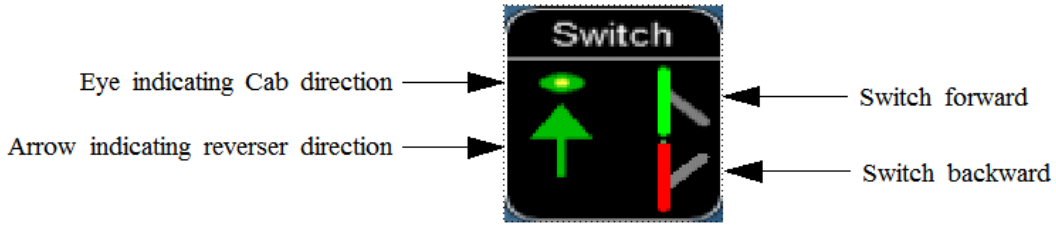
Hitting the F7 key displays train service names (player train always has “Player” as identification). Hitting Shift+F7 displays the rolling stock IDs.



In a multiplayer session, player-controlled trains will have the id specified by the player:

7.4.10 F8 Switch Monitor

Use the Switch Monitor, enabled by the F8 key, to see the direction of the turnout directly in front and behind the train.



There are 4 ways to change the direction:

- Click on the turnout icon in the Switch Monitor;
- Press the G key (or, for the turnout behind the train, the Shift+G key);
- Hold down the Alt key and use the left mouse button to click on the switch in the Main Window;
- Use the dispatcher window, as described here.

Please note that with the last two methods you can throw any switch, not only the one in front but also the one behind the train.

However, note also that not all switches can be thrown: in some cases the built-in AI dispatcher holds the switch in a state to allow trains (especially AI trains) to follow their predefined path.

The arrow and eye symbols have the same meaning as in the track monitor. The switch is red when it is reserved or occupied by the train, and green when it is free.

A switch shown in green can be operated, a switch shown in red is locked.

7.4.11 F9 Train Operations Monitor

The Open Rails Train Operations window is similar in function to the F9 window in MSTS, but includes additional features to control the air brake connections of individual cars. For example, it is possible to control the connection of the air brake hoses between individual cars, to uncouple cars without losing the air pressure in the train's air brake hose, or uncouple cars with their air brakes released so that they will coast.

The unit which the player has selected as the unit from which to control the train, i.e. the lead unit, is shown in red.

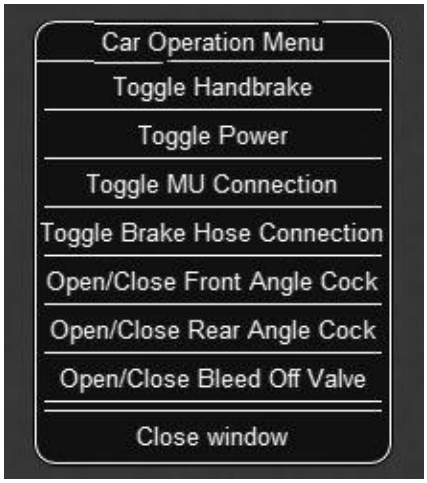
Cars are numbered according to their UiD in the Consist file (.con) or UiD in the Activity file (.act). Scrolling is accomplished by clicking on the arrows at the left or right bottom corners of the window.

Clicking on the coupler icon between any two cars uncouples the consist at that point.

You can also uncouple cars from your player train by pressing the U key and clicking with the mouse on the couplers in the main window.

By clicking on any car in the above window, the Car Operation Menu appears. By clicking in this menu it is possible:

- to apply and release the handbrake of the car;
- to power on or power off the car (if it is a locomotive). This applies for both electric and diesel locomotives;
- to connect or disconnect locomotive operation with that of the player locomotive;
- to connect or disconnect the car's air hoses from the rest of the consist;
- to toggle the angle cocks on the air hoses at either end of the car between open and closed;
- to toggle the bleed valve on the car to vent the air pressure from the car's reservoir and release the air brakes to move the car without brakes (e.g. humping, etc.).



By toggling the angle cocks on individual cars it is possible to close selected angle cocks of the air hoses so that when the cars are uncoupled, the air pressure in the remaining consist (and optionally in the uncoupled consist) is maintained. The remaining consist will then not go into “Emergency” state.

When working with cars in a switch yard, cars can be coupled, moved and uncoupled without connecting them to the train’s air braking system (see the F5 HUD for Braking). Braking must then be provided by the locomotive’s independent brakes. A car or group of cars can be uncoupled with air brakes active so that they can be recoupled after a short time without recharging the entire brake line (“Bottling the Air”). To do this, close the angle cocks on both ends of the car or group before uncoupling. Cars uncoupled while the consist is moving, that have had their air pressure reduced to zero before uncoupling, will coast freely.

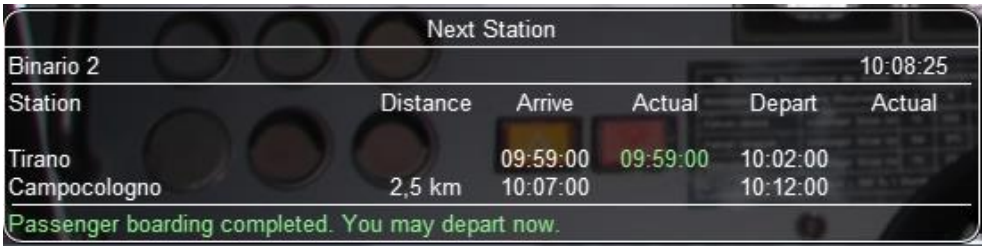
In Open Rails, opening the bleed valve on a car or group of cars performs two functions: it vents the air pressure from the brake system of the selected cars, and also bypasses the air system around the cars if they are not at the end of the consist so that the rest of the consist remains connected to the main system. In real systems the bypass action is performed by a separate valve in each car. In the F5 HUD Braking display, the text “Bleed” appears on the car’s display line until the air pressure has fallen to zero.

More information about manipulating the brakes during coupling and uncoupling can also be found here.

7.4.12 F10 Activity Monitor

The Activity Monitor is similar in function to MSTS. It records the required “Arrival” time of your train and the actual arrival time as well as the required “Depart” time and the actual departure time.

A text message alerts the engineer as to the proper departure time along with a whistle or other departure sound.



7.4.13 Odometer

The odometer display appears in the centre of the main window, toggled on or off by the keys Shift+Z. The direction of the count is toggled by the keys Shift+Ctrl+Z, and the odometer is reset or initialized by Ctrl+Z.

When set for counting down, it initializes to the total length of the train. As the train moves, the odometer counts down, reaching zero when the train has moved its length. When set for counting up, it resets to zero, and measures the train’s total movement.

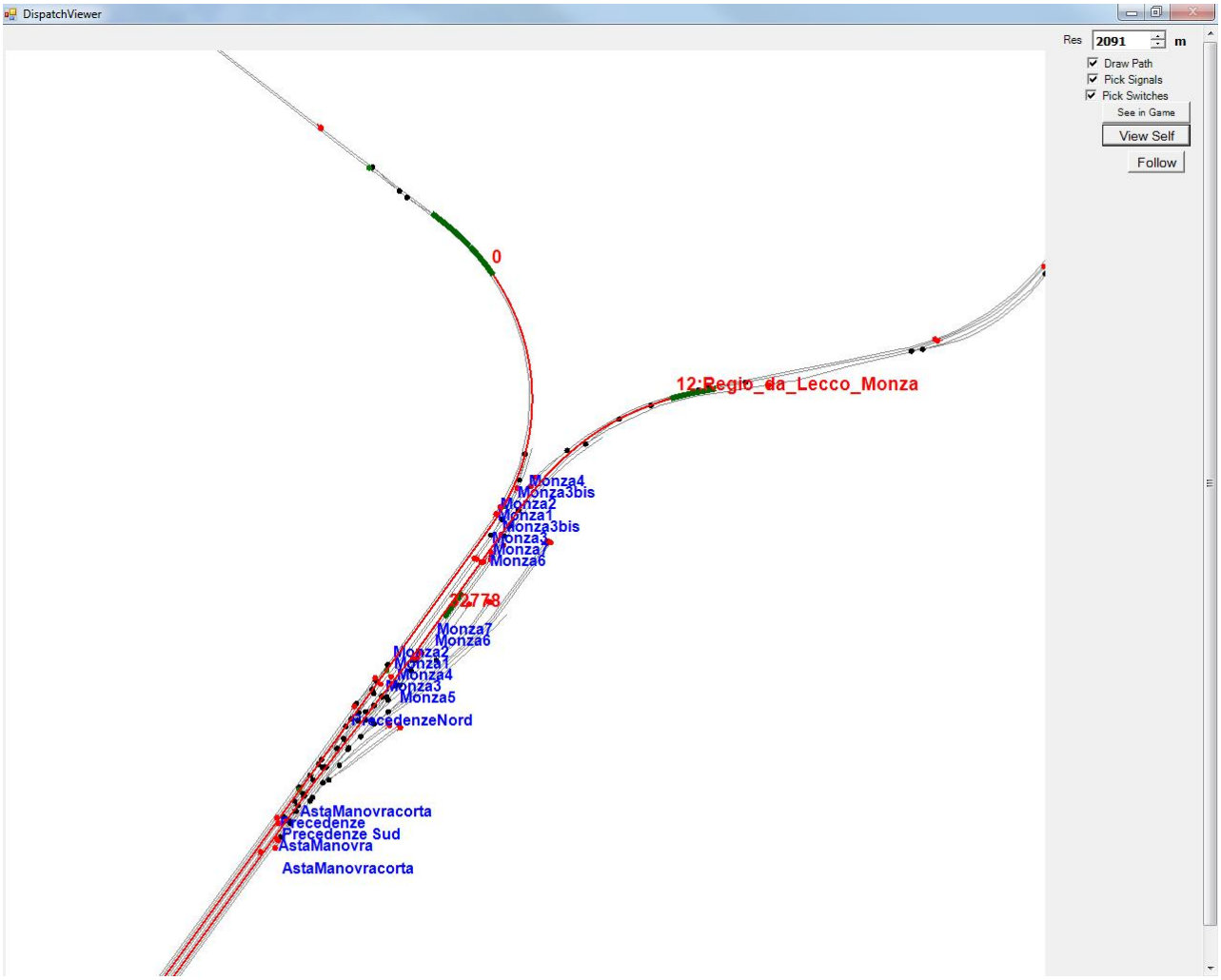
For example, if the odometer is set for counting down and you click Ctrl+Z as the front of the train passes a location, then when it reaches zero you will know, without switching views, that the other end of the train has just reached the same point, e.g. the entrance to a siding, etc.

7.5 Dispatcher Window

The dispatcher window is a very useful tool to monitor and control train operation. The Dispatcher window option must be selected.

The dispatcher window is actually created by pressing Ctrl+9. The window is created in a minimized state, so to display it in front of the OR window you must click on “Alt+Tab” and select the dispatcher window icon, or click on one of the OR icons in the taskbar. If you are running OR in full-screen mode, you must also have the “Fast full screen Alt+Tab” option selected to have both the OR and the dispatcher windows displayed at the same time. After the dispatcher window has been selected with Alt+Tab, successive Alt_Tabs will toggle between the OR window and the dispatcher window.

The dispatcher window is resizable and can also be maximized, e.g. on a second display. You can define the level of zoom either by changing the value within the “Res” box or by using the mouse wheel. You can pan through the route by moving the mouse while pressing the left button. You can hold the shift key while clicking the mouse in a place in the map; this will quickly zoom in with that place in focus. You can hold Ctrl while clicking the mouse in a place in the map, which will zoom out to show the whole route. Holding Alt and clicking will zoom out to show part of the route.



The dispatcher window shows the route layout and monitors the movement of all trains. While the player train is identified by the “PLAYER” string (or by a “0” if autopilot mode is enabled), AI- trains are identified by their OR number (that is also shown in the “Extended HUD for Dispatcher Information”), followed by the service name. Static consists are identified as in MSTS.

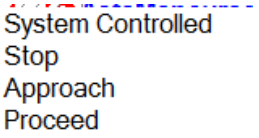
The state of the signals is shown (only three states are drawn, that is

- Stop – drawn in red
- Clear_2 -drawn in green
- while all signals with restricting aspect are drawn in yellow.

The state of the switches is also shown. A switch shown with a black dot indicates the main route, while a grey dot indicates a side route.

When the “Draw path” is checked, the first part of the path that the train will follow is drawn in red. If a trailing switch in the path is not in the correct position for the path, a red X is shown on it.

When left- or right-clicking on a signal, a pop-up menu appears:



Using the mouse, you can force the signal to Stop, Approach or Proceed. Later you can return it to System Controlled mode.

By left- or right-clicking on a switch, a small pop-up menu with the two selections “Main route” and “Side route” appears. By clicking on them you can throw the switch, provided the OR AI dispatcher allows it.

With respect to AI trains, as a general rule you can command their signals but not their switches, because AI trains are not allowed to exit their path.

The two checkboxes “Pick Signals” and “Pick Switches” are checked as default. You can uncheck one of them when a signal and a switch are superimposed in a way that it is difficult to select the desired item.

You can click a switch (or signal) in the dispatcher window and press Ctrl+Alt+G to jump to that switch with the free-roam (8-key) camera.

If you click on “View Self” the dispatcher window will center on the player train. However, if the train moves, centering will be lost.

You can select a train by left-clicking with the mouse its green reproduction in the dispatcher window, approximately half way between the train's head and its name string. The train body becomes red. Then if you click on the button “See in game” the main Open Rails window will show this train in the views for the 2, 3, 4 or 6 keys, (and the 5-key view if available for this train). Display of the new train may require some time for OR to compute the new image if the train is far away from the previous camera view.

Take into account that continuous switching from train to train, especially if the trains are far away, can lead to memory overflows.

If after a train selection you click on “Follow” the dispatcher window will remain centered on that train.

7.6 Additional Train Operation Commands

OR supports an interesting range of additional train operation commands. Some significant ones are described here below.

7.6.1 Diesel Power On/Off

With the key Y the player diesel engine is alternatively powered on or off. At game start the engine is powered on.

With the keys Shift+Y the helper diesel locomotives are alternatively powered on or off. At game start the engines are powered on.

Note that by using the Car Operation Menu you can also power on or off the helper locomotives individually.

7.6.2 Initialize Brakes

Entering this command fully releases the train brakes. Usually the train must be fully stopped for this to be allowed. This action is usually not prototypical. Check the keyboard assignment for the keys to be pressed. The command can be useful in three cases:

1. A good number of locomotives do not have correct values for some brake parameters in the .eng file; MSTS ignores these; however OR uses all these parameters, and it may not allow the brakes to release fully. Of course, it would be more advisable to correct these parameters.
2. It may happen that the player does not want to wait for the time needed to recharge the brakes; however the use of the command in this case is not prototypical of course.
3. The player may wish to immediately connect brake lines and recharge brakes after a coupling operation; again, the use of the command is not prototypical.

7.6.3 Connect/Disconnect Brake Hoses

This command should be used after coupling or decoupling. As the code used depends on keyboard layout, check the keys to be pressed as described in paragraph 6.5 or by pressing F1 at runtime.

More information on connecting brakes and manipulating the brake hose connections can be found here and here.

7.6.4 Doors and Mirror Commands

Note that the standard keys in OR for these commands are different from those of MSTS.

7.6.5 Wheelslip Reset

With the keys Ctrl+X you get an immediate wheelslip reset.

7.6.6 Toggle Advanced Adhesion

Advanced adhesion can be enabled or disabled by pressing Ctrl+Alt+X.

7.6.7 Request to Clear Signal

When the player train has a red signal in front or behind it, it is sometimes necessary to ask for authorization to pass the signal. This can be done by pressing Tab for a signal in front and Shift+Tab for a signal behind. You will receive a voice message reporting if you received authorization or not. On the Track monitor window the signal colours will change from red to

red/white if permission is granted.

7.6.8 Change Cab - Ctrl+E

All locomotives and some passenger cars have a forward-facing cab which is configured through an entry in the ENG file. For example, the MSTS Dash9 file *TRAINSET\DASH9\dash9.eng* contains the entry:

```
CabView ( dash9.cvf )
```

Where a vehicle has a cab at both ends, the ENG file may also contain an entry for a reversed cab:

```
CabView ( dash9_rv.cvf )
```

OR will recognise the suffix `_rv` as a rear-facing cab and make it available as follows.
When double-heading, banking or driving multiple passenger units (DMUs and EMUs), your train will contain more than one cab and OR allows you to move between cabs to drive the train from a different position. If you change to a rear-facing cab, then you will be driving the train in the opposite direction.

If there are many cabs in your train, pressing Ctrl+E moves you through all forward and rear-facing cabs in order up to the last cab in the train. If you end up in a rear-facing cab, your new “forward” direction will be your old “backward” direction. So you will now drive the train in the opposite direction.

A safety interlock prevents you from changing cabs unless the train is stationary and the direction lever is in neutral with the throttle closed.

7.6.9 Train Oscillation

You can have train cars oscillating (swaying) by hitting Ctrl+V; if you want more oscillation, click Ctrl+V again. Four levels, including the no-oscillation level, are available by repeating Ctrl+V.

7.7 Autopilot Mode

Autopilot mode is not a simulation of a train running with cruise control; instead, it is primarily a way to test activities more easily and quickly; but it can also be used to run an activity (or part of it, as it is possible to turn autopilot mode on or off at runtime) as a trainspotter or a visitor within the cab.

Autopilot mode is enabled with the related checkbox in the Experimental Options. It is active only in activity mode (i.e. not in explorer or timetable modes).

When starting the game with any activity, you are in player driving mode. If you press Alt+A, you enter the autopilot mode: you are in the loco's cabview with the train moving autonomously accordingly to path and station stops and of course respecting speed limits and signals. You still have control over the horn, bell, lights, doors, and some other controls that do not affect train movement. The main levers are controlled by the autopilot mode, and indications are correct.

You can at any moment switch back to player driven mode, by pressing Alt+A, and can again switch to autopilot mode by again pressing Alt+A.

When in player driven mode you can also change cab or direction. However, if you return to

autopilot mode, you must be on the train's path; other cases are not managed. When in player driven mode you can also switch to manual, but before returning to autopilot mode you must first return to auto mode.

Station stops, waiting points and reverse points are synchronized as far as possible in the two modes.

Cars can also be uncoupled in autopilot mode (but check that the train will stop in enough time, otherwise it is better to change to player driven mode). A static consist can also be coupled in autopilot mode.

The Request to Clear signal (Tab key) works in the sense that the signal opens. However in autopilot mode at the moment that the train stops you must switch to player driven mode to pass the signal and then you can return to autopilot mode.

Note that if you run with Advanced Adhesion enabled, you may have wheelslip when switching from autopilot mode to player driven mode.

The jerky movements of the levers in autopilot mode are the result of the way that OR pilots the train.

7.8 Changing the View

Open Rails provides all of the MSTS views *plus* additional view options:

- A 3D interior cabview option (where a 3D cabview file is available);
- Control of the view direction using the mouse (with the right-hand button pressed);
- The exterior views (keys 2,3,4,6) and the interior view (key 5) can now be attached to any train in the simulation by the new Ctrl+9 key operation;

All of the required key presses are shown by the “F1 Help” key in the game. Note that some of the key combinations are different in Open Rails than in MSTS. For instance, in Open Rails the cab “Headout” views from the cab view are selected by the “Home” and “End” keys, and the view direction is manipulated by the four arrow keys, or the mouse with the right-hand button depressed.

The commands for each of the views are described below.

- Key 1 opens the 2D driver’s view from the interior of the controlling cab of the player locomotive. The entire cab view can be moved to other cabs (if available) in the player train by successive presses of Ctrl+E; the train must be stopped and the direction switch in Neutral. The view can be changed to the fixed left, front, or right view by clicking the left, up or right arrow keys. (The 2D view is constructed from three 2D images, so the actual camera position can only be modified by editing the contents of the .cvf file.) The headout views (if available) are selected by “Home” (right hand side, looking forward) or “End” (left hand side, looking back) and the headout view direction is controlled by the mouse with the right button depressed.

- Key Alt+1 opens the 3D driver's view (if the locomotive has a 3D cabview file) from the interior of the controlling cab of the player locomotive. The camera position and view direction are fully player controllable.

Rotation of the camera view in any direction is controlled by the mouse with the right-hand button depressed (or alternatively by the four arrow keys). The camera's position is moved forward or backward along the train axis with the PageUp and PageDown keys, and moved left or right or up or down with Alt + the four arrow keys. The headout views (if available) are selected by "Home" (right hand side, looking forward) or "End" (left hand side, looking back) and the outside view direction is controlled by the mouse with the right button depressed.

- Keys 2 and 3 open exterior views that move with the active train; these views are centered on a particular "target" car in the train. The target car or locomotive can be changed by pressing Alt+PageUp to select a target closer to the head of the train and Alt+PgDown to select a target toward the rear. The 2-View selects the train's head end as the initial target, the 3-View the last car. Alt+Home resets the target to the front, Alt+End to the rear of the train.

The camera's position with respect to the target car is manipulated by the four arrow keys – left or right arrows rotate the camera's position left or right, up or down arrows rotate the camera's position up or down while remaining at a constant distance from the target. The distance from the camera to the target is changed by zooming with the PageUp and PageDown keys. Rotation of the camera view direction about the camera's position is controlled by holding down the Alt key while using the arrow buttons, or by moving the mouse with the right mouse button depressed. The scroll wheel on the mouse zooms the screen image; the field of view is shown briefly. Ctrl+8 resets the view angles to their default position relative to the current target car.

- Key 4 is a trackside view from a fixed camera position with limited player control - the height of the camera can be adjusted with the up and down arrow keys. Repeated pressing of the 4-key may change the position along the track.
- Key 5 is an interior view that is active if the active train has a "passenger view" declaration in any of its cars (or in the caboose). The view direction can be rotated by the arrow keys or the mouse with right button pressed. The camera position is moved forward or backward along the train axis with the PageUp and PageDown keys, and moved left or right or up or down with Alt + the four arrow keys. Successive presses of the 5 key will move the view to successive views (if they exist) within the active train. Note that the "active train" may be an AI train selected by Ctrl+9.
- Key 6 is the brakeman's view – the camera is assumed to be at either end of the train, selected by Alt+Home and Alt+End. Rotation is controlled by the arrow keys or mouse with right button depressed. There is no brakeman's view for a single locomotive.
- Key 8 is the free camera view; the camera starts from the current Key-2 or Key-3 view position, and moves forward (PageUp key) or back (PageDown key) along the view direction. The direction is controlled by the arrow keys or the mouse with right button depressed. The speed of motion is controlled by the Shift (increase) or Ctrl (decrease)

keys. Open Rails saves the position of previous Key 8 views and can recall them by repeatedly pressing Shift+8.

- Ctrl+9 is an ORTS feature: it controls the target train for the Key 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 views during activities or timetable operations. If there is more than one active train or there are consists declared in the activity for pickup, pressing this key combination will set the view to display each train or consist in turn. To return to the player train, press the 9 key. There may be a delay for each change of view as Open Rails calculates the new image. The cab view and data values in the F4 window always remain with the Player train. To directly select which train is to be shown use the Dispatcher Window. In this window, locate the train that you wish to view, and click the mouse on it until the block representing it turns red; then click on the button "Show in game" in the Dispatcher Window and then return to the Open Rails window.
- Key 9 resets the target train for the Key 2,3,4,5 and 6 views to the Player train.

Holding the Shift key with any motion command speeds up the movement, while the Ctrl key slows it.

Note that view direction control using the mouse with right button pressed differs slightly from using Alt plus the arrow keys – the view direction can pass through the zenith or nadir, and the direction of vertical motion is then reversed. Passing back through the zenith or nadir restores normal behavior.

Whenever frame rates fall to unacceptable levels players are advised to adjust camera positions to cull some models from being in view and to adjust the camera again to include more models when frame rates are high.

7.9 Toggling Between Windowed Mode and Full-screen

You can toggle at any time between windowed mode and full-screen by pressing Alt+Enter.

7.10 Modifying the Game Environment

7.10.1 Time of Day

When in activity mode Open Rails software reads the StartTime from the MSTS .act file to determine what the game time is for the activity. In combination with the longitude and latitude of the route and the season, Open Rails computes the actual sun position in the sky. This provides an extremely realistic representation of the time of day selected for the activity. For example, 12 noon in the winter will have a lower sun position in the northern hemisphere than 12 noon in the summer. Open Rails game environment will accurately represent these differences.

Once the activity is started, Open Rails software allows the player to advance or reverse the environment "time of day" independently of the movement of trains. Thus, the player train may sit stationary while the time of day is moved ahead or backward. The keys to command this depend from the national settings of the keyboard, and can be derived from the key assignment list obtained pressing F1.

In addition, Open Rails offers functionality similar to the time acceleration switch for MSTS.
Use Alt + Page Up or Alt + Page Down keys to change the speed of the game clock.

In a multiplayer session, all clients' time, weather and season selections are overridden by those set by the server.

7.10.2 Weather

When in activity mode Open Rails software determines the type of weather to display from the Weather parameter in the MSTS Activity file. In the other modes the weather can be selected in the start menu.

7.10.3 Modifying Weather at Runtime

He following commands are available at runtime (keys not shown here can be found in the key assignment list obtained pressing F1):

- Overcast increase/decrease: increases and decreases the amount of clouds
- fog increase/decrease
- precipitation increase/decrease.

This demonstrates Open Rails software's foundation for dynamic weather effects in the game.

Moreover, pressing Alt+P can change the weather from clear to raining to snowing and back to clear.

7.10.4 Seasons

In activity mode Open Rails software determines the season, and its related alternative textures to display from the Season parameter in the MSTS Activity file. In other modes the player can select the season in the start menu.

7.11 Screenshot - Print Screen

Press the keyboard Print Screen key to capture an image of the game window. This will be saved by default in the file C:\Users\<username>\Pictures\Open Rails\Open Rails <date and time>.png[1]

Although the image is taken immediately, there may be a short pause before the confirmation appears. If you hold down the Print Screen key, then OR takes multiple images as fast as it can.

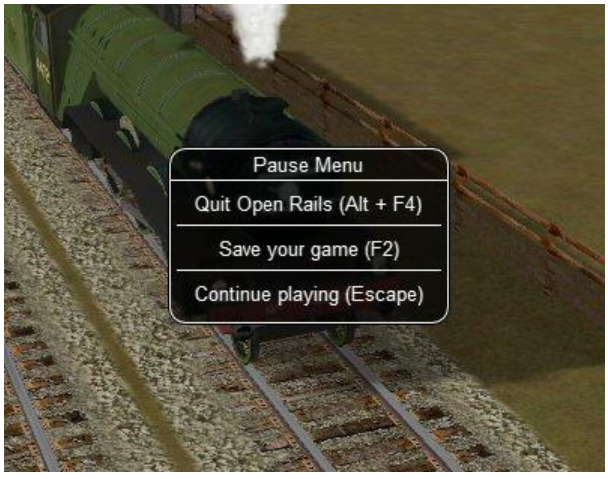
The key to capture the current window - Alt+Print Screen - is not intercepted by OR.

7.12 Suspending or Exiting the Game

You can suspend or exit the game by pressing the ESC key at any time. The window shown at the right will appear.

The window is self-explanatory.

If you are running OR in a Window, you can also exit OR by simply clicking on the x on the right top of the OR window.



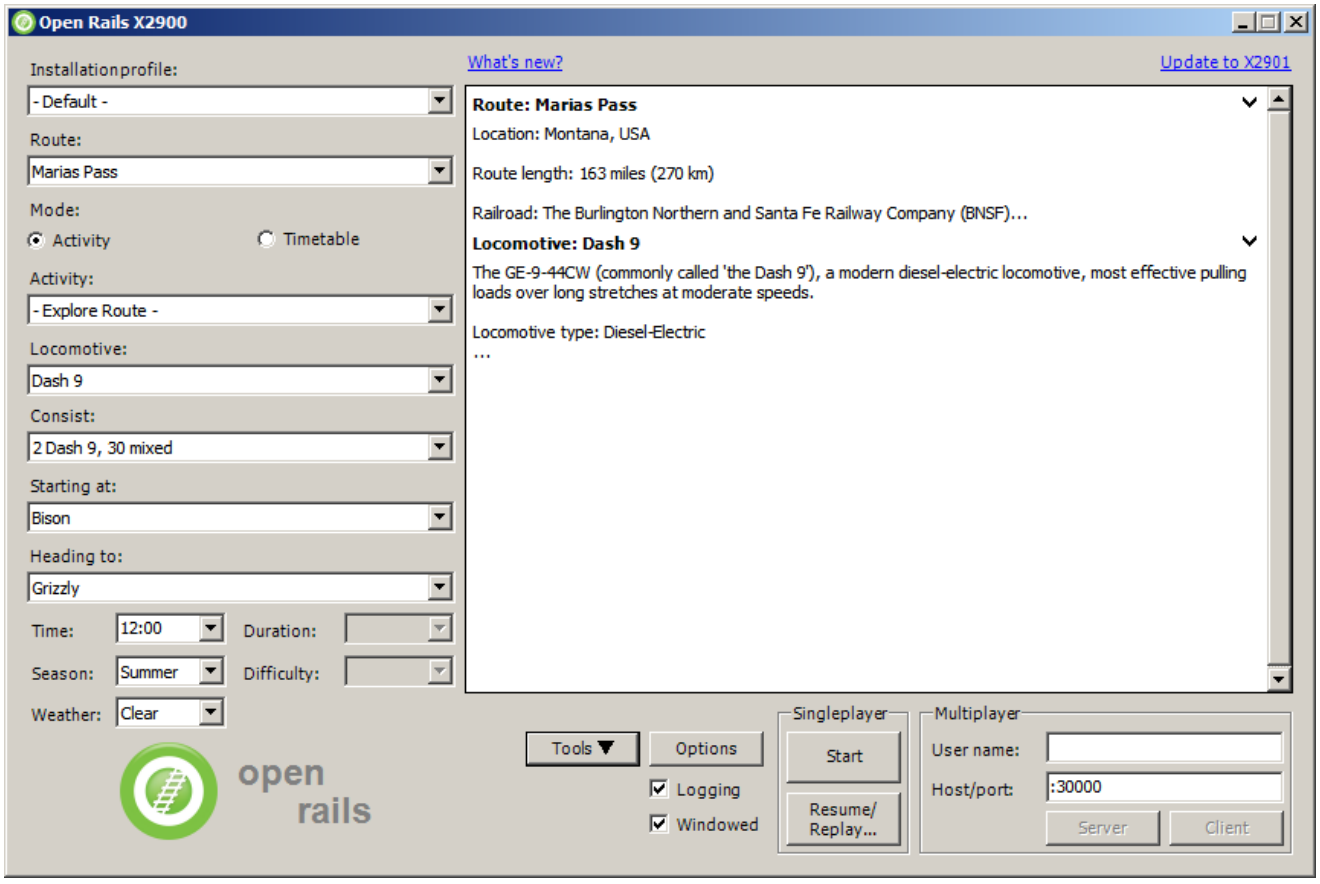
[1] Windows also refers to the Pictures folder by the name My Pictures

7.13 Save and Resume

Open Rails provides *Save* and *Resume* facilities and keeps every save until you choose to delete it.

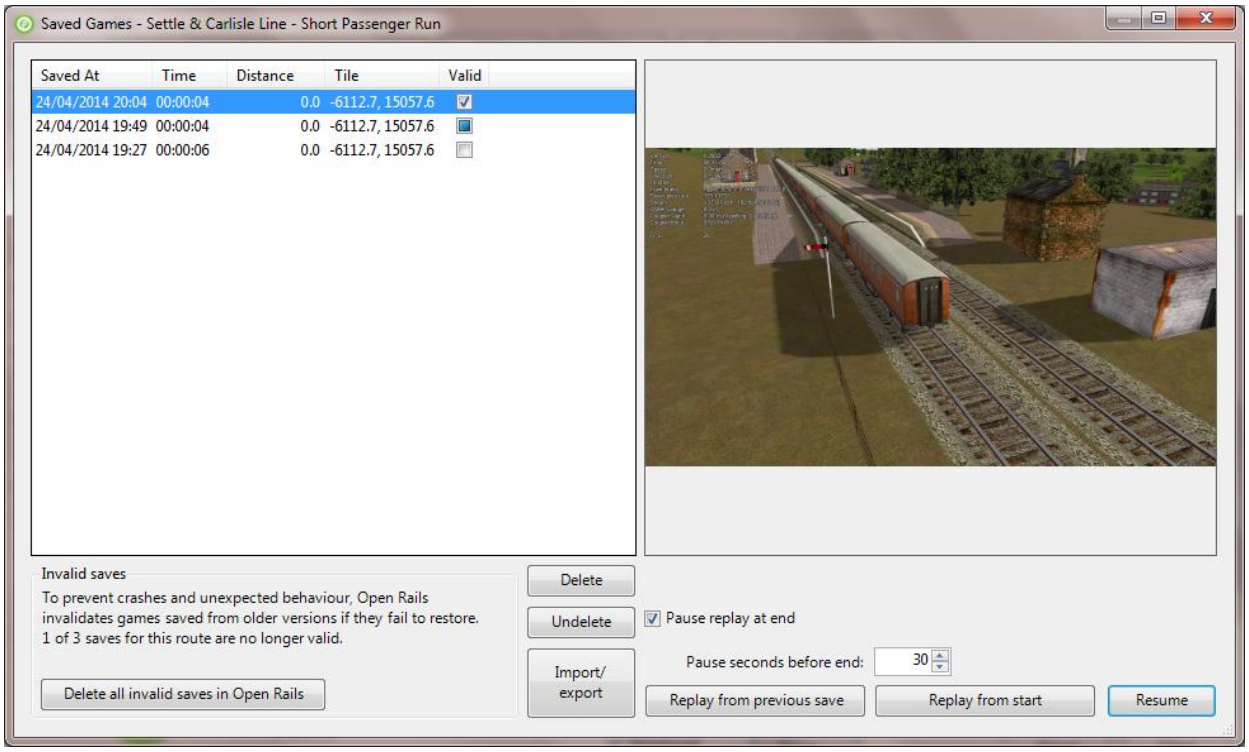
During the game you can save your session at any time by pressing F2.

You can view the saved sessions by choosing an activity and then pressing the *Resume/Replay...* button.



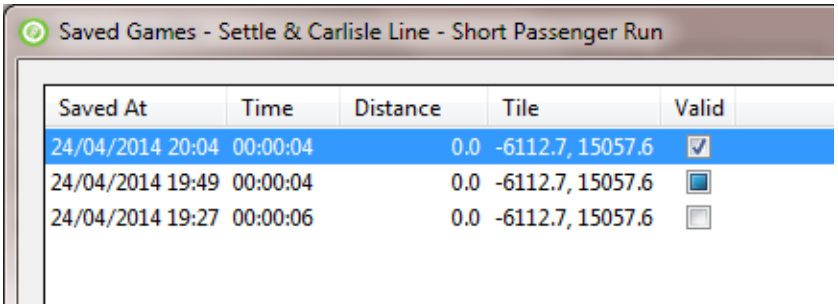
This will display the list of any Saves you made for this activity:

To help you identify a Save, the list provides a screenshot and date and also distance travelled in metres and the time and position of the player's train. This window can be widened to show the full width of the strings in the left panel

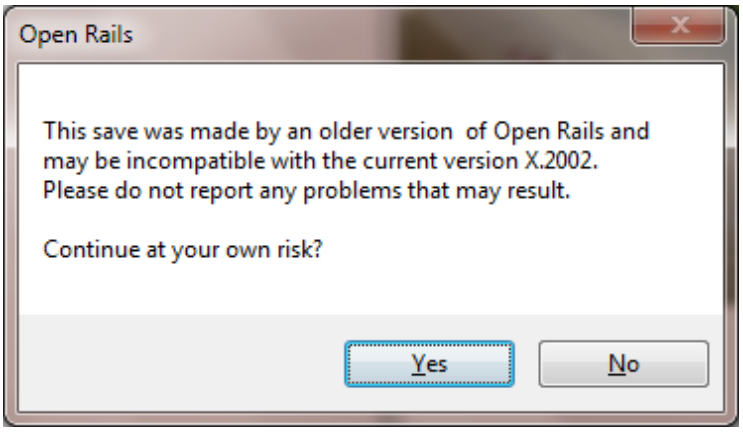

Saved Games - Settle & Carlisle Line - Short Passenger Run
Saved At
Time
Distance
Tile
Valid
24/04/2014 20:04 00:00:04 0.0 -6112.7, 15057.6
24/04/2014 19:49 00:00:04 0.0 -6112.7, 15057.6
24/04/2014 19:27 00:00:06 0.0 -6112.7, 15057.6
Invalid saves
To prevent crashes and unexpected behaviour, Open Rails invalidates games saved from older versions if they fail to restore.
1 of 3 saves for this route are no longer valid.
Delete all invalid saves in Open Rails
Delete
Undelete
Import/ export
Pause replay at end
Pause seconds before end:
30
Replay from previous save
Replay from start
Resume

7.13.1 Saves from Previous OR Versions

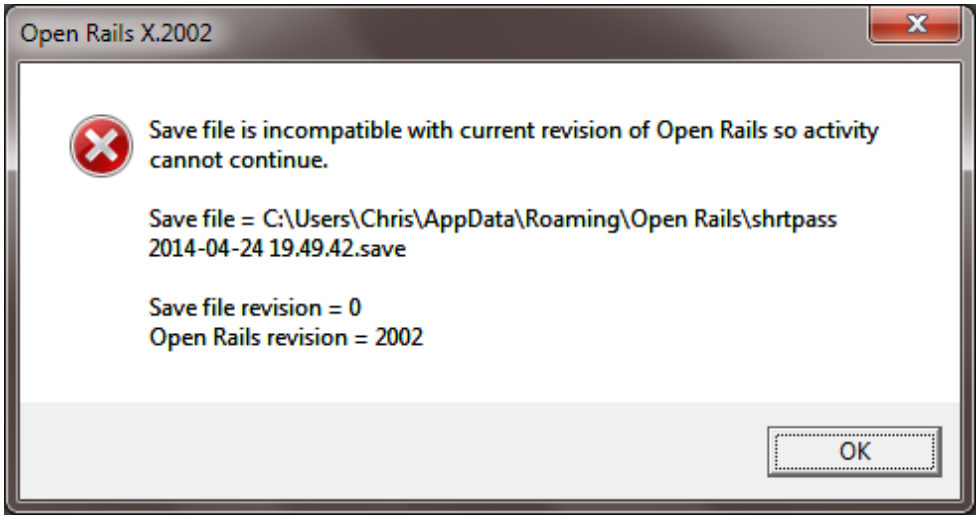
You should be aware that these Saves will only be useful in the short term as each new version of Open Rails will mark Saves from previous versions as potentially invalid (e.g. the second entry in the list below).



When you resume from such a Save, there will be a warning prompt.


Open Rails
This save was made by an older version of Open Rails and may be incompatible with the current version X.2002.
Please do not report any problems that may result.
Continue at your own risk?
Yes
No

The Save will be tested during the loading process. If a problem is detected, then you will be notified.


Open Rails X.2002
Save file is incompatible with current revision of Open Rails so activity cannot continue.
Save file = C:\Users\Chris\AppData\Roaming\Open Rails\shrtpass 2014-04-24 19.49.42.save
Save file revision = 0
Open Rails revision = 2002
OK

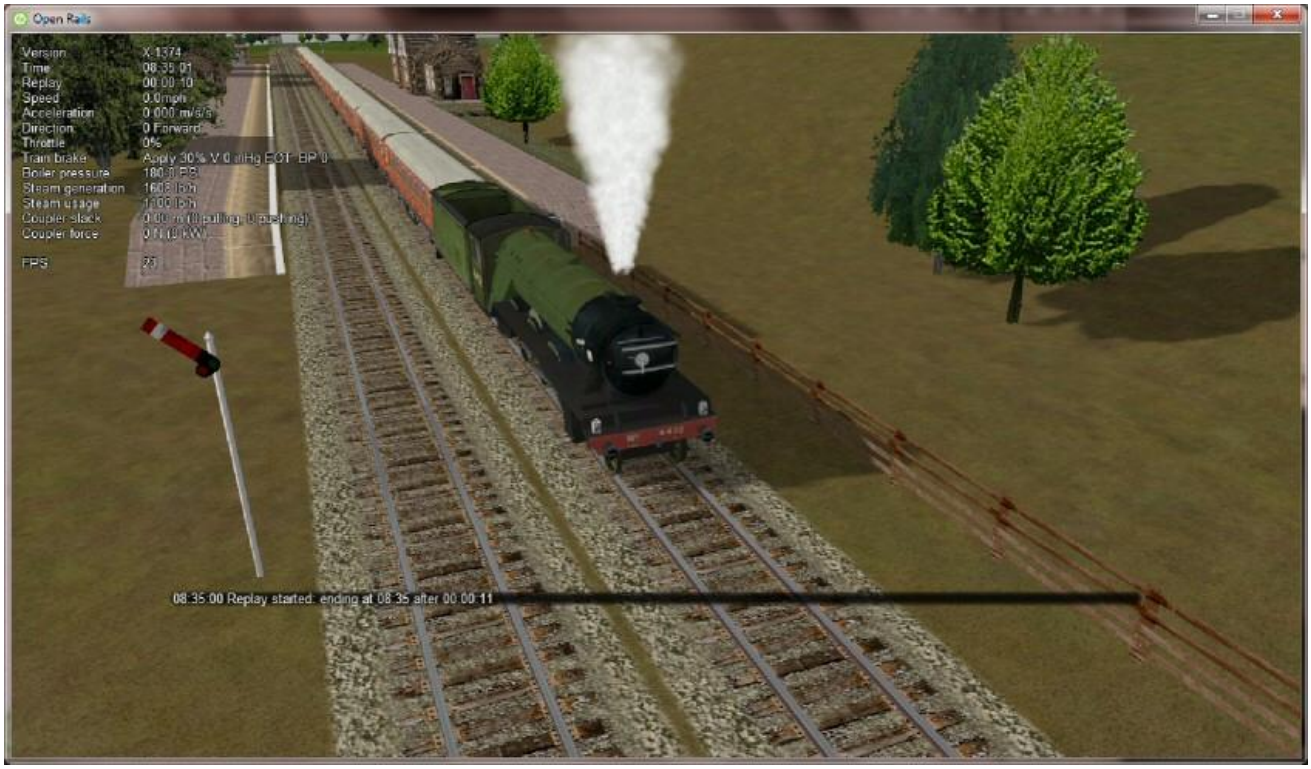
This Save and any Saves of the same age or older will be of no further value and will be marked as invalid automatically (e.g. the 3rd entry in the list). The button in the bottom left corner of the menu deletes all the invalid Saves for all activities in Open Rails.

7.14 Save and Replay

As well as resuming from a Save, you can also replay it just like a video. All the adjustments you made to the controls (e.g. opening the throttle) are repeated at the right moment to re-create the activity. As well as train controls, changes to the cameras are also repeated.

Just like a "black box flight recorder" Open Rails is permanently in recording mode, so you can save a recording at any time just by pressing *F2 Save.*

Normally, you would choose the replay option by *Menu > Resume > Replay from start.*

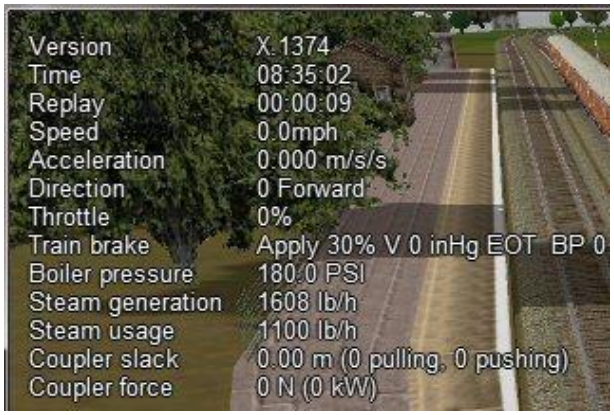

Open Rails
Version X 1374
Time 08:35:01
Replay 00:00:10
Speed 0.0mph
Acceleration 0.000 m/s/s
Direction 0 Forward
Throttle 0%
Train brake Apply 30% V 0 inHg EOT BP 0
Boiler pressure 180.0 PSI
Steam generation 1608 lb/h
Steam usage 1100 lb/h
Coupler slack 0.00 m (0 pulling, 0 pushing)
Coupler force 0 N (0 kW)
FPS 27
08:35:00 Replay started: ending at 08:35 after 00:00:11

A second option *Menu > Resume > Replay from previous save* lets you play back a shortened recording. It resumes from the most recent Save it can find and replays from that point onwards. You might use it to play back a 5 minute segment which starts an hour into an activity.

A warning is given when the replay starts and a replay countdown appears in the *F5 Head Up Display*.

Warning

Countdown


Version X 1374
Time 08:35:02
Replay 00:00:09
Speed 0.0mph
Acceleration 0.000 m/s/s
Direction 0 Forward
Throttle 0%
Train brake Apply 30% V 0 inHg EOT BP 0
Boiler pressure 180.0 PSI
Steam generation 1608 lb/h
Steam usage 1100 lb/h
Coupler slack 0.00 m (0 pulling, 0 pushing)
Coupler force 0 N (0 kW)

By default, the simulation pauses when the replay is exhausted. Use *Pause replay at end* on the Saved Games window to change this.

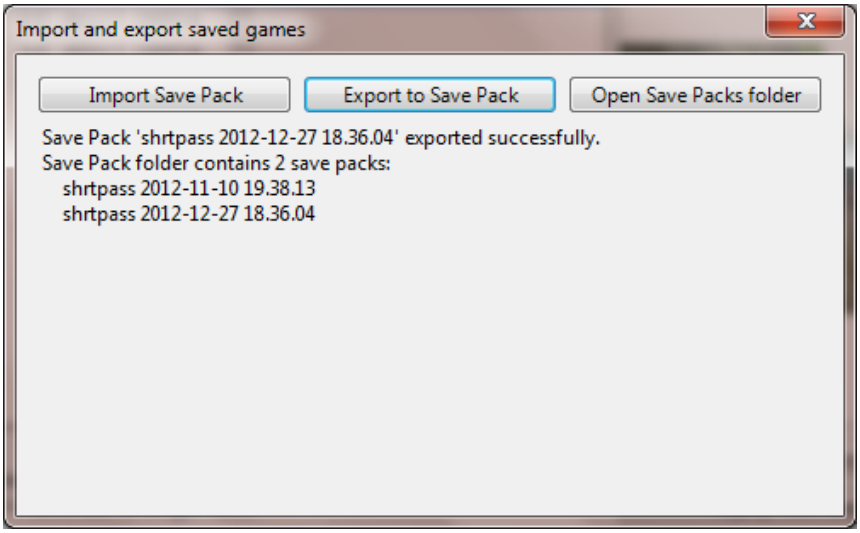
Little can usefully be achieved by adjusting the train controls during replay, but the camera controls can be freely adjusted. If changes are made (e.g. switching to a different camera view or zooming out), then replay of the camera controls is suspended while replay of the train controls continues. The result is a bit like editing a video. To resume the replay of the camera controls, just press *Esc* to open the *Pause Menu* and then choose *Continue playing.*

A possible future development may be to edit the replay file to adjust times or to add messages to provide a commentary. This would allow you to build demonstrations and tutorials.

Replay is a feature which is unique to Open Rails. You can use it to make your own recordings and Open Rails provides a way to exchange them with other players.

7.14.1 Exporting and Importing Save Files

To export a Save file, use the command:
Menu > Options > Resume > Import/export saves > Export to Save Pack


Import and export saved games
Import Save Pack
Export to Save Pack
Open Save Packs folder
Save Pack 'shrtpass 2012-12-27 18.36.04' exported successfully.
Save Pack folder contains 2 save packs:
shrtpass 2012-11-10 19.38.13
shrtpass 2012-12-27 18.36.04

OR will pack the necessary files into a single archive file with the extension "ORSavePack" and place it in the folder *Open Rails\Save Packs.*

This ORSavePack file is a zip archive which contains the replay commands, a screenshot at the moment of saving, a Save file (so that Open Rails can offer its *Resume* option) and a log file. This arrangement means that the ORSavePack archive is ideal for attaching to a bug report.

You can use the *Import Save Pack* button on the same window to import and unpack a set of files from an ORSavePack archive. They will then appear in your *Saved Games* window.

7.15 Analysis Tools

The extended HUDs provide a rich amount of information for analysis, evaluation and to assist in troubleshooting.

You can move through the sequence of HUD displays by repeatedly pressing Shift+F5.

You can turn off any extended HUD, while continuing to show the basic HUD, by pressing Alt+F5. Pressing Alt+F5 again returns the display of the currently active extended HUD.

7.15.1 Extended HUD for Consist Information

This page shows in the first line data about the whole train. Under “Player” you will find the train number as assigned by OR followed by an “F” if the forward cab is selected, and an “R” if the rear

CONSIST INFORMATION
Player Tilted Type Length Weight Control Mode Out of Control Cab Aspect
0 F False Pass 0,2km 467t EXPLORER UNDEFINED Clear_2
Car Flipped Type Length Weight Drv/Cabs Wheels
0 False Pass 13m 96t DF 4-6-2
1 False Pass 8m 62t 8
2 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
14 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
3 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
13 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
12 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
11 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
18 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
17 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
16 False Pass 19m 32t 4-4
15 True Pass 16m 20t 4-4

cab is selected.

“Tilted” is true in case the consist name ends with “tilted” (e.g. ETR460_tilted.con), in which case it means that it is a tilting train.

“Control mode” shows the actual control mode. Read more about this here.

Cab aspect shows the aspect of next signal.

In the other lines data about the train cars are shown. Data are mostly self-explanatory. Under Drv/Cabs a D appears if the car is drivable, and an F and/or a R appear if the car has a front and/or a rear cab.

7.15.2 Extended HUD for Locomotive Information

The next extended HUD display shows locomotive information.

LOCOMOTIVE INFORMATION
Direction Forward Reverser 100% Throttle 75% D-brake 1%
Car 0 Fwd MU'd 75% 10m/s 2421kW 238kN
Car 1 Fwd MU'd 75% 10m/s 2360kW 232kN
Car 2 Fwd MU'd 75% 10m/s 353kW 35kN
Fuel 20062 L Status Running Power 3162.8 W 3163 W Load 76.5% 726 RPM Flow 540.4 L/h
Circuit breaker Closed TCS OK Driver OK Auxiliary power PowerOn
=== Key Inputs === 33 709 lb/h
Input Evap 2 311 ft^2 Grate 46 ft^2 Boil 160 ft^3 Sup 421 ft^2 Fuel Cal 14 359 btu/lb
Adj Cyl Eff 1.0 Cyl Exh 0.90 Port Open 0.09
=== Steam Production === 33 709 lb/h
Boiler Power 547 bhp Mass 7 829 lb Out 34 660 lb/h Boiler Eff 0.87
Heat In 843 btu Out 3 850 btu Steam 1 198 btu/lb Water 350 btu/lb and 351 btu/ft^3 Heat 2 757 673 btu Max 2 778 514 btu
Temp Flue 1 378 F Water 377 F S Ratio 0.91 MaxSuper 200 F CurSuper 128 F Sup Fact 1.29
=== Steam Usage === 16 350 lb/h
Usage Cyl 15 936 lb/l Blower 0 lb/h Rad 317 lb/h Comp 0 lb/h Safety 0 lb/h Cock 0 lb/h Gen 105 lb/h Stoke 0 lb/h
Press Chest 92 psi Inj 103 apsi Cutoff 75 apsi Exhaust 22 apsi Back 1 apsi PreComp 1 apsi PreAdm 1 apsi MEP 43 apsi Max Safe 16 006 lb/h (2 x 3.0)
Status Safety False Plug False Prime False Boil Heat False Super True Gear False
=== Fireman ===
Fire Ideal 1 455 lb Fire 1 455 lb Max Fire 8 050 lb/h Fuel 121 lb/h Burn 243 lb/h Comb 5.3 lbs/ft2
Injector Max 6 482 gal(uk)/h (14mm) Inj 1 0 gal(uk)/h temp 0 F Inj 2 0 gal(uk)/h temp 2 0 F
Tender Coal 18 000 lb 100% Water 5 000 gal(uk) 100%
Status CoalOut False WaterOut False FireOut False Stoker False Boost False B Reset False
Throttle
100%
0
=== Performance ===
Power MaxIHP 1 755 hp IHP 473 hp DHP 1 490 hp
Force Theo TE 28 058 Start TE 23 917 lbf TE 7 818 lbf Draw 24 631 lbf Critic 12 486 lbf Cnt Speed 52.7 mph
Move Piston 430ft/m Sp Fact 0.445 Drv 99 rpm MF- Gear 1.00
Power In/Out
100%
0
=== Experimental - Slip Monitor ===

As can be seen from this screenshot related to a fictitious train with a diesel, an electric and a

steam loco, information about diesel and electric locomotives is contained on a single line, while information about steam locomotives includes a large set of parameters, which shows the sophistication of OR's steam physics.

In the bottom part of this HUD two moving graphs show the evolution in time of the throttle value and of the power of the player locomotive (the one where the active cab resides).

7.15.3 Extended HUD for Brake Information

BRAKE INFORMATION
Main reservoir 134 psi

Car	Type	BrkCyl	BrkPipe	AuxRes	ErgRes	MRPipe	RetValve	TripleValve	Handbrk	Conn	AnglCock BleedOff
0 - 0	1P	35 psi	64 psi	84 psi	84 psi			Emergency		T	A- B+
0 - 1	1P	35 psi	64 psi	84 psi	84 psi			Emergency		I	A+ B+
32884 - 0	1P	0 psi	63 psi	63 psi	63 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 1	1P	0 psi	63 psi	63 psi	63 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 2	1P	0 psi	63 psi	63 psi	63 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B-

This extended HUD display includes all the information of the basic HUD plus Brake status information. Information is shown for all cars. The first number shows the car UiD in the train, as found in the consist file or the activity file; the following alphanumeric string shows the brake system (1P: single-pipe system, V: vacuum etc.) and the current state of the air brakes on the unit. More information on this display can be found in Open Rails Braking and F9 Train Operations Monitor.

7.15.4 Extended HUD for Train Force Information

In the first part of this display some information related to the player locomotive is shown. The information format differs if advanced adhesion has been selected or not in the Simulation Options.

The table part shows total force for up to ten locos/cars in the train. The first number shows the position of the car in the train. The second number is the total force acting on the car. This is the sum of the other forces after the signs are properly adjusted. The next number is the motive force which should only be non-zero for locomotives, and that becomes negative during dynamic braking. Next number is the brake force. Follows the friction force calculated from the Davis equation. The following value is the force due to gravity. Next values are the friction forces due to the car being in a curve and/or in a tunnel. The next value is the coupler force between this car and the next (negative is pull and positive is push). The mass in kg and the track elevation in % under the car follow. All of the force values are in Newtons. Many of these values are relative to the orientation of the car, but some are relative to the train. If applicable, two further fields appear: the first is "True" if the car is flipped with respect to the train or “False” otherwise, while the second field signals coupler overload.

FORCE INFORMATION
Wheel slip 7% (2%/s)
Conditions 38%
Axle drive force 425958 N
Axle brake force 140000 N
Num of substeps 50 (filtered by 10)
Solver RungeKutta4
Stability correction 2
Axle out force 265651 N (2019 kW)
Car Total Motive Brake Friction Gravity Curve Tunnel Coupler Mass Elev Notes
1 67940 265651 140000 2145 0 351.98 0.00 -55214 154999 0.00
2 44139 218399 70773 1596 0 228.68 0.00 -156877 100700 0.00
3 42189 61009 90000 1552 0 443.27 0.00 -83703 96250 0.00
4 27351 0 55000 1210 0 141.70 0.00 0 62400 0.00

At the bottom of the picture two moving graphs are displayed.

The upper graph displays the motive force in % of the player locomotive. Green colour means tractive force, red colour means dynamic brake force.

The lower graph refers – roughly speaking - to the level of refinement used to compute axle force.

7.15.5 Extended HUD for Dispatcher Information

The next extended HUD displays Dispatcher Information. It is very useful to troubleshoot activities or timetables. The player train and any AI trains will show in the Dispatcher Information, a line for each train.

DISPATCHER INFORMATION
Train Travelled Speed Max AI mode AI data Mode Auth Distance Signal Distance Con
0 F 0yd 0.0mph 0.0mph OOC OOPA PLA
3 F 33.7mi 29.0mph 30.0mph RUN 044&000 SIGN CLR2 0.3mi Auto
1 F 11.8mi 38.2mph 40.0mph RUN 050&000 SIGN CLR2 0.9mi Auto

A detailed explanation of the various columns follows:

- Train: Internal train number, with P=Passenger and F=Freight.
- Travelled: distance travelled.
  Gives an indication if all is well. If a train started an hour ago and 'travelled' is still 0.0, something's clearly wrong.
- Speed: present speed.
- Max: maximum allowed speed.

- AI Mode: gives an indication of what the AI train is 'doing'.

Possible states:

INI: train is initializing. Normally you would not see this.

STP: train is stopped other than in a station. The reason for the stop is shown in "Authority".

BRK: train is preparing to stop. Does not mean it is actually braking, but it 'knows' it has to stop, or at least reduce speed, soon.
Reason, and distance to the related position, are shown in "Authority" and "Distance".

ACC: train is accelerating, either away from a stop or because of a raise in allowed speed.

RUN: train is running at allowed speed.

FOL: train is following another train in the same signal section.
Its speed is now derived from the speed of the train ahead.

STA: train is stopped in station.

WTP: train is stopped at waiting point.

EOP: train is approaching end of path.

STC: train is Static train, or train is in Inactive mode if waiting for next action.

- AI data : shows throttle (first three digits) and brake (last three digits) positions when AI train is running, but shows departure time (booked) when train is stopped at station or waiting point, or shows activation time when train is in inactive mode (state STC).
- Mode :

SIGN (signal)

NODE

MAN: train is in manual mode (only player train, see here)

OOC: train is out of control

EXPL: train is in explorer mode (only player train)

When relevant, this field also shows delay (in minutes), e.g. S+05 mean Signal mode, 5 minutes delay.

- Auth: End of "authorization" info - that is, the reason why the train is preparing to stop or slow down.
Possible reasons are :

SPDL: speed limit imposed by speed sign.

SIGL: speed limit imposed by signal.

STOP: signal set at state "STOP".

REST: signal set at state "RESTRICTED" (train is to reduce speed at approaching this signal).

EOA: end of authority - generally only occurs in non-signaled routes or area, where authority is based on NODE mode and not SIGNAL mode.

STAT: station.

TRAH: train ahead.

EOR: end of train's route, or subroute in case the train approaches a reversal point.

AUX: all other authorization types, including auxiliary action authorizations (e.g. waiting points).

When the control mode is “NODE” the column “Auth” can show following strings:

EOT: end of track

EOP: end of path

RSW: switch reserved by another train

LP: train is in loop

TAH: train ahead

MXD: free run for at least 5000 meters

NOP: no path reserved.

When the control mode is “OOC” the column “Auth” can show following strings:

SPAD: passed signal at danger

RSPD: passed signal at danger running backwards

OOAU: passed authority limit

OOPA: out of path

SLPP: slipped into path

SLPT: slipped to end of track

OOTR: out of track

MASW: misaligned switch.

Distance: distance to the authority location.

Signal: aspect of next signal (if any).

Distance: distance to this signal.

Note that if signal state is STOP, and it is the next authority limit, there is a

difference of about 30m between authority and signal distance. This is the 'safety margin' that AI trains keep to avoid accidentally passing a signal at danger.

Consist: the first part of the train's service name. Only for the player, always the “PLAYER” string is displayed.

Path: the state of the train's path.

The figure left of the "=" sign is the train's present subpath counter : a train's path is split into subpaths when its path contains reversal points.
The details between { and } are the actual subpath.
Following the final } can be x<N>, this indicates that at the end of this subpath the train will move on to the subpath number N.

Path details :

The path shows all track circuit sections which build this train's path. Track circuit sections are bounded by nodes, signals or cross-overs, or end-of-track.
Each section is indicated by its type :

- is plain train section.

> is switch (no distinction is made for facing or trailing switch).

+ is crossover.

[is end-of-track.

Following each section is the section state. Numbers in this state refer to the train numbers as shown at the start of each row. Below, <n> indicates such a number.

- <n> section is occupied by train <n>.
- (<n>) section is reserved for train <n>.
- # (either with <n> or on its own) section is claimed by a train which is waiting for a signal.
- & (always in combination with <n>) section is occupied by more than one train.
- deadlock info (always linked to a switch node) :
- * possible deadlock location - start of a single track section shared with a train running in opposite direction.
- ^ active deadlock - train from opposite direction is occupying or has reserved at least part of the common single track section.
  Train will be stopped at this location - generally at the last signal ahead of this node.
- ~ active deadlock at that location for other train - can be significant as this other train can block this train's path.

The dispatcher works by reserving track vector nodes for each train. An AI train will be allowed to move (or start) only if all of the nodes up to the next potential passing location are not reserved for another train. If this condition cannot be met, in Timetable Mode the AI train will not spawn.

There are other reasons why an AI train might not appear in Timetable Mode. The current dispatcher assumes that all routes are unsignaled. The dispatcher issues a track authority (which is similar to a track warrant) to all trains. For an AI train to start, the tracks it needs must not be already reserved for another train. The dispatcher compares the paths of the trains to identify possible passing points and then reserves tracks for a train up until a passing point. When a train gets near the next passing point the reservation is extended to the next one. The end result is that in Timetable Mode an AI train cannot be placed on a track if that section of track is already occupied by or reserved for another train. A section of track is any track bounded by either a switch or a signal.

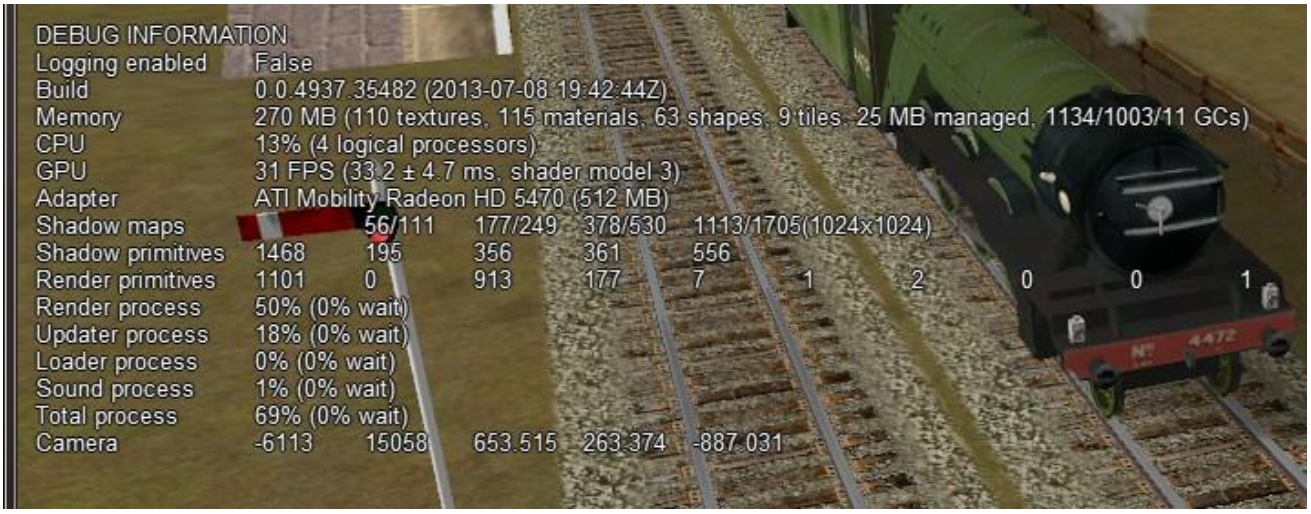
Also, a train is not created if it would be partly or fully superimposed on an already existing train, or if its path is not long enough for it. This applies to both Timetable Mode and Activity Mode.

7.15.6 Extended HUD for Debug Information

The last extended HUD display shows Debug information.

The first line (“Logging enabled”) refers to logging as described in paragraphs 6.6 and 6.7.

A wide variety of parameters is shown, from frame wait and render speeds in milliseconds, to number of primitives, Process Thread resource utilization and number of Logical CPUs from the system’s bios. They are very useful in case of OR stuttering, to find out where the bottleneck is.


DEBUG INFORMATION
Logging enabled False
Build 0.0.4937.35482 (2013-07-08 19:42:44Z)
Memory 270 MB (110 textures, 115 materials, 63 shapes, 9 tiles, 25 MB managed, 1134/1003/11 GCs)
CPU 13% (4 logical processors)
GPU 31 FPS (33.2 ± 4.7 ms, shader model 3)
Adapter ATI Mobility Radeon HD 5470 (512 MB)
Shadow maps 56/111 177/249 378/530 1113/1705(1024x1024)
Shadow primitives 1468 195 356 361 556
Render primitives 1101 0 913 177 7 1 2 0 0 1
Render process 50% (0% wait)
Updater process 18% (0% wait)
Loader process 0% (0% wait)
Sound process 1% (0% wait)
Total process 69% (0% wait)
Camera -6113 15058 653.515 263.374 -887.031

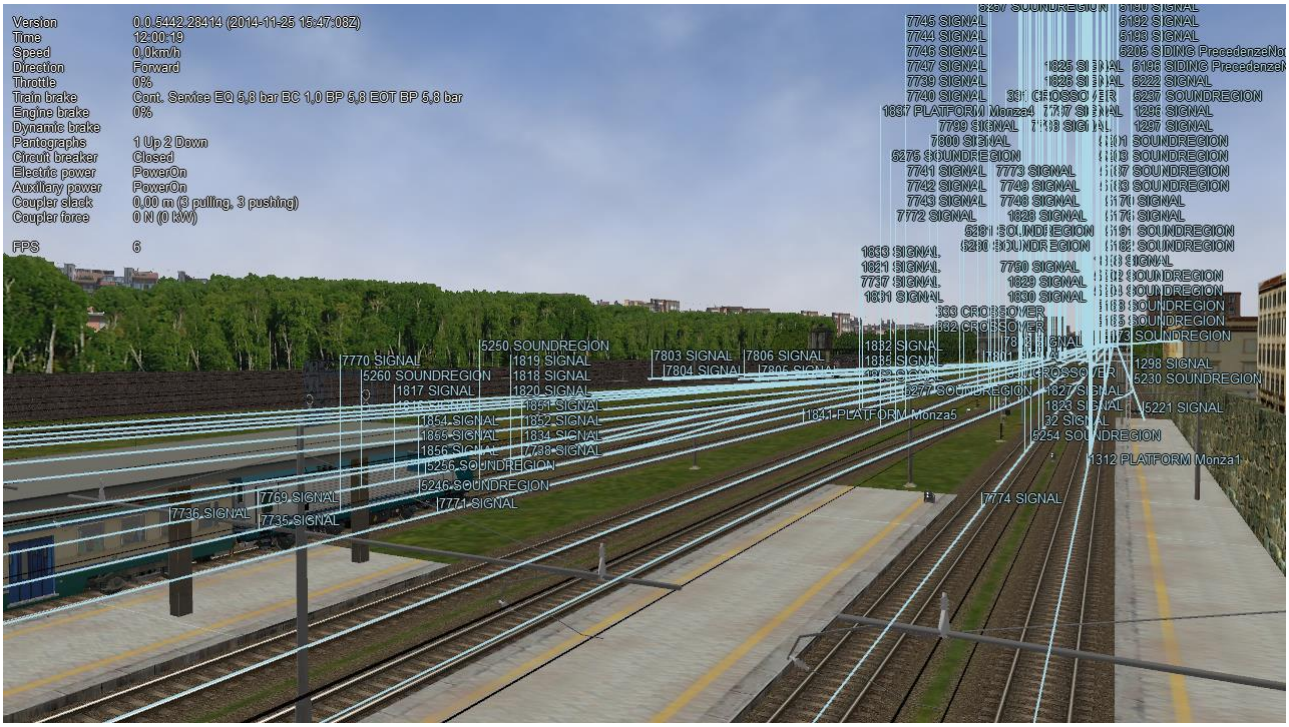
The values in the “Camera” line refer to the two tile coordinates and to the three coordinates within the tile.

At the bottom of the picture, some moving graphs are displayed that show the actual load of the computer.

Referring to memory occupation, about at least 400 MB must remain free to avoid out-of-memory exceptions.

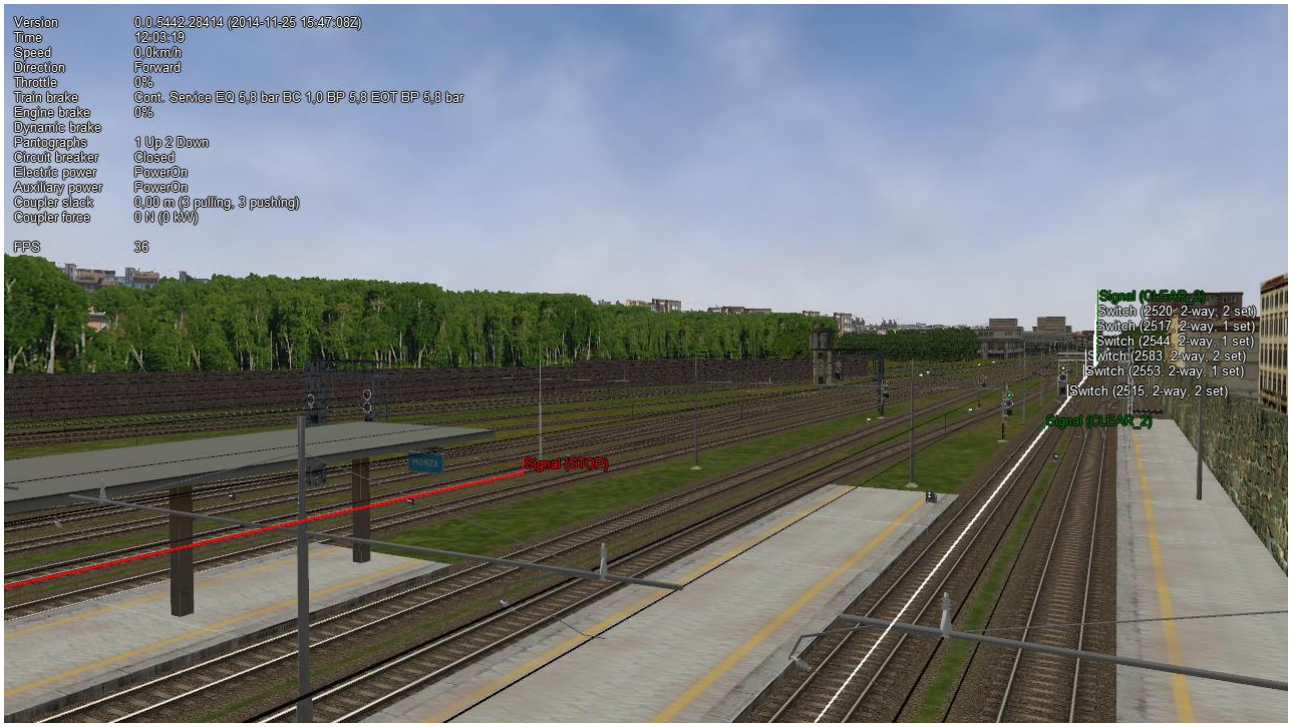
7.15.7 Viewing Interactive Track Items

By pressing Ctrl+Alt+F6 at runtime you get a picture like this one that allows you to take note of the interactive IDs for debugging purposes.



7.15.8 Viewing Signal State and Switches

By pressing Ctrl+Alt+F11 you get a picture like the following that shows the state of the signals and switches on the path.

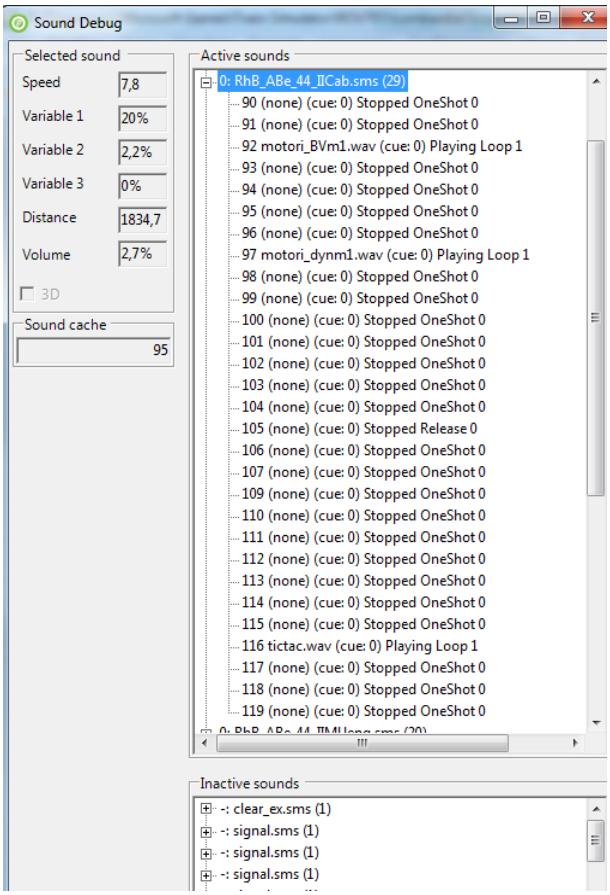

Version 0.0.5442.28414 (2014-11-25 15:47:08Z)
Time 12:03:19
Speed 0,0km/h
Direction Forward
Throttle 0%
Train brake Cont. Service EQ 5,8 bar BC 1,0 BP 5,8 EOT BP 5,8 bar
Engine brake 0%
Dynamic brake
Pantographs 1 Up 2 Down
Circuit breaker Closed
Electric power PowerOn
Auxiliary power PowerOn
Coupler slack 0,00 m (3 pulling, 3 pushing)
Coupler force 0 N (0 kW)
FPS 36
Switch (2520, 2-way, 2 set)
Switch (2517, 2-way, 1 set)
Switch (2544, 2-way, 1 set)
Switch (2583, 2-way, 2 set)
Switch (2553, 2-way, 1 set)
Switch (2515, 2-way, 2 set)
Signal (CLEAR, 2)
Signal (STOP)

7.15.9 Sound Debug Window

By pressing Alt+S this window opens:

It shows in the upper part the list of all active .sms files; by expanding the detail of a specific .sms file, the list of all sound streams is displayed, as well as their state. On the left the value of the analog sound variables is displayed for the selected .sms file. The volume refers to the first stream of the selected sound file.

Active and inactive sounds toggle passing from internal to external views and vice-versa.


Sound Debug
Selected sound
Speed 7,8
Variable 1 20%
Variable 2 2,2%
Variable 3 0%
Distance 1834,7
Volume 2,7%
3D
Sound cache
95
Active sounds
0: RhB_ABe_44_IICab.sms (29)
90 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
91 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
92 motori_BVm1.wav (cue: 0) Playing Loop 1
93 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
94 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
95 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
96 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
97 motori_dynm1.wav (cue: 0) Playing Loop 1
98 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
99 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
100 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
101 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
102 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
103 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
104 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
105 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped Release 0
106 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
107 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
109 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
110 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
111 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
112 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
113 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
114 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
115 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
116 tictac.wav (cue: 0) Playing Loop 1
117 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
118 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
119 (none) (cue: 0) Stopped OneShot 0
Inactive sounds
-: clear_ex.sms (1)
-: signal.sms (1)
-: signal.sms (1)
-: signal.sms (1)

7.16 OpenRailsLog.txt Log file

When the “Logging” option in the main window is checked, a log file named OpenRailsLog.txt file is generated. This file contains rich information about the execution of the game session, allowing identification of critical problems. This file should always be attached to requests of support in case of problems.

The contents of the file are often self-explanatory, and therefore can be evaluated by the same contents developer. It includes reports of various errors in the MSTS files which are ignored by OR, including missing sound files, unrecognized terms in some files, etc. Selecting the Experimental Option ”Show shape warnings” described here allows OR to report errors found in shape files in the log file. It includes also reports about malfunctions in the gaming session, such as trains passing red signals, as well as OR malfunctions.

7.17 Code-embedded Logging Options

OR source code is freely downloadable; check the www.OpenRails.org website for this. Within the code there are some debug options that, when activated, generate specific extended log files, e.g. for analysis of signal and of AI train behavior. Short specific info on this can be provided to people with programming skills.

7.18 Testing in Autopilot Mode

Autopilot mode is a powerful tool to help in testing activities.

8 Open Rails Physics

Open Rails physics is in an advanced stage of development. The physics structure is divided into logical classes; more generic classes are parent classes, more specialized classes inherit properties and methods of their parent class. Therefore, the description for train cars physics is also valid for locomotives (because a locomotive is a special case of a train car). All parameters are defined within the .wag or .eng file. The definition is based on MSTS file format and some additional ORTS based parameters. To avoid possible conflicts in MSTS, the "ORTS" prefix is added to every OpenRails specific parameter (such as ORTSMaxTractiveForceCurves).

The .wag or .eng file may be placed as in MSTS in the TRAINS\TRAINSET*TrainCar*\ folder (where *TrainCar* is the name of the train car folder). If OR-specific parameters are used, or if different .wag or .eng files are used for MSTS and OR, the preferred solution is to place the OR-specific .wag or .eng file in a created folder TRAINS\TRAINSET*TrainCar*\OpenRails\ (see here for more).

8.1 Train Cars (WAG, or "Wagon" Part of ENG file)

The behavior of a train car is mainly defined by a resistance / resistive force (a force needed to pull a car). Train car physics also includes coupler slack and braking. In the description below, the Wagon section of the WAG / ENG file is discussed.

8.1.1 Resistive Forces

Open Rails physics calculates resistance based on real world physics: gravity, mass, rolling resistance and optionally curve resistance. This is calculated individually for each car in the train. The program calculates rolling resistance, or friction, based on the Friction parameters in the Wagon section of .wag/.eng file. Open Rails identifies whether the .wag file uses the FCalc utility or other friction data. If FCalc was used to determine the Friction variables within the .wag file, Open Rails compares that data to the Open Rails Davis equations to identify the closest match with the Open Rails Davis equation. If no-FCalc Friction parameters are used in the .wag file, Open Rails ignores those values, substituting its actual Davis equation values for the train car.

A basic (simplified) Davis formula is used in the following form:

$$res\_force = ORTSDavis\_A + speedMpS \cdot (ORTSDavis\_B + ORTSDavis\_C \cdot speedMpS^2)$$

Where *res_force* is the friction force of the car. The rolling resistance can be defined either by FCalc or ORTSDavis_A, _B and _C components. If one of the ORTSDavis components is zero, FCalc is used. Therefore, e.g. if the data doesn't contain the B part of the Davis formula, a very small number should be used instead of zero.

When a car is pulled from steady state, an additional force is needed due to higher bearing forces. The situation is simplified by using a different calculation at low speed (5 mph and lower). Empirical static friction forces are used for different classes of mass (under 10 tons, 10 to 100 tons and above 100 tons). In addition, if weather conditions are poor (snowing is set), the static friction is increased.

When running on a curve and if the "Curve dependent resistance" option is enabled, additional resistance is calculated, based on the curve radius, rigid wheel base, track gauge and super elevation. The curve resistance has its lowest value at the curve's optimal speed. Running at

higher or lower speed causes higher curve resistance. The worst situation is starting a train from zero speed. The track gauge value can be set by ORTSTrackGauge parameter, otherwise 1435 mm is used. The rigid wheel base can be also set by ORTSRigidWheelBase, otherwise the value is estimated. Further details are discussed later.

When running on a slope (uphill or downhill), additional resistance is calculated based on the car mass taking into account the elevation of the car itself. Interaction with the “car vibration feature” is a known issue (if the car vibrates the resistance value oscillate).

8.1.2 Coupler Slack

Slack action for couplers is introduced and calculated the same way as in MSTS.

8.1.3 Adhesion of Locomotives – Settings Within the Wagon Section of ENG files

MSTS calculates the adhesion parameters based on a very strange set of parameters filled with an even stranger range of values. Since ORTS is not able to mimic the MSTS calculation, a standard method based on the adhesion theory is used with some known issues in use with MSTS content.

MSTS “Adheasion” (sic) parameters are not used in ORTS. A new set of parameters is used instead:

ORTSAdhesion (ORTSCurtius_Kniffler (A B C D))

The A, B and C values are coefficients of a standard form of various empirical formulas, e.g. Curtius-Kniffler or Kother. The D parameter is used in the advanced adhesion model described later.

From A, B and C a coefficient CK is computed, and the adhesion force limit is then calculated by multiplication of CK by the car mass and the acceleration of gravity (9.81), as better explained later.

The adhesion limit is only considered in the adhesion model of locomotives.

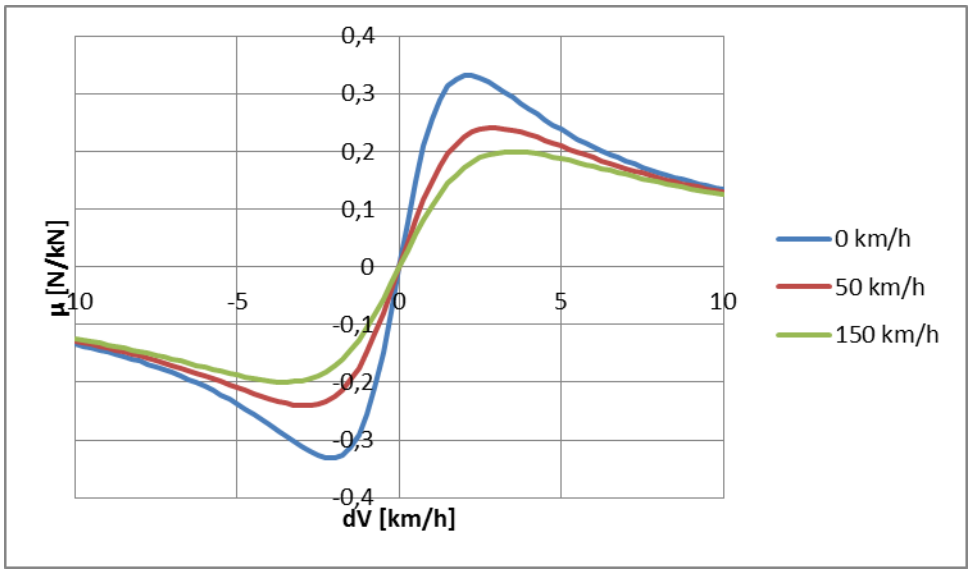
The adhesion model is calculated in two possible ways. The first one –the simple adhesion model – is based on a very simple threshold condition and works similarly to the MSTS adhesion model. The second one – the advanced adhesion model – is a dynamic model simulating the real world conditions on a wheel-to-rail contact and will be described later. The advanced adhesion model uses some additional parameters such as:

- ORTSAdhesion (ORTSSlipWarningThreshold (T)), where T is the wheelslip percentage considered as a warning value to be displayed to the driver.
- ORTSAdhesion(Wheelset (Axle (ORTSInertia (Inertia)))) , where Inertia is the model inertia in $kg.m^2$ and can be set to adjust the advanced adhesion model dynamics. The value considers the inertia of all the axles and traction drives. If not set, the value is estimated from the locomotive mass and maximal power.

The first model -simple adhesion model - is a simple tractive force condition-based computation. If the tractive force reaches its actual maximum, the wheel slip is indicated in HUD view and the tractive force falls to 10% of the previous value. By reducing the throttle setting adherence is regained. This is called the simple adhesion model.

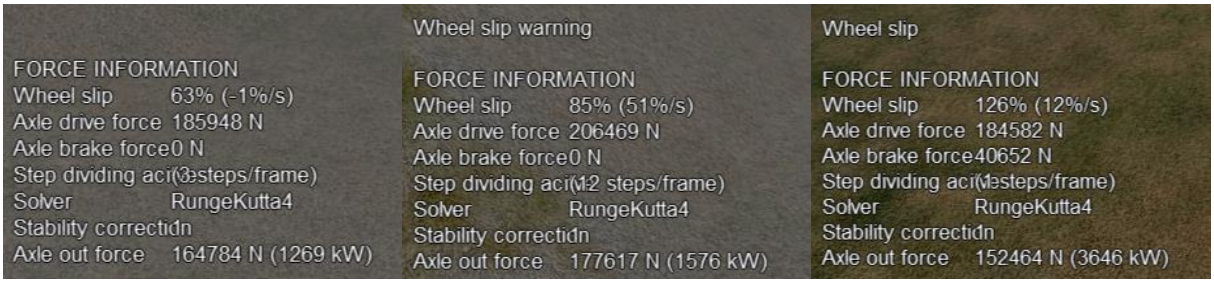
The second adhesion model (advanced adhesion model) is based on a simplified dynamic adhesion theory. Very briefly, there is always some speed difference between the wheel speed of the locomotive and the longitudinal train speed when the tractive force is different from zero. This difference is called “wheel slip / wheel creep”. The adhesion status is indicated in the HUD “Force Information” view by the “Wheel Slip” parameter and as a warning in the general area of the HUD view. For simplicity, only one axle model is computed (and animated). A tilting feature and the independent axle adhesion model will be introduced in the future.

The heart of the model is the slip characteristics (picture below).



The “wheel creep” describes the stable area of the characteristics and is used in the most of the operation time. When the tractive force reaches the actual maximum of the slip characteristics, force transition falls down and more power is used to speed up the wheels, so called “wheel slip”.

To avoid the loss of the tractive force, use the throttle in combination with sanding to return to the stable area (wheel creep area). A possible sequence of the wheel slip development is shown on the pictures below. The “Wheel slip” value is displayed as a value relative to the best adhesion conditions for actual speed and weather. The value of 63% means very good force transition. For values higher than “Wagon (ORTSadhesion (ORTSSlipWarningThreshold))” or 70% by default, the “Wheel slip warning” is displayed, but the force transition is still very good. This indication should warn you to use the throttle very carefully. Exceeding 100%, the “Wheel slip” message is displayed and the wheels are starting to speed up, which can be seen on the speedometer or in external view 2. To reduce the wheel slip, use “throttle down”, sanding or the locomotive brake.



The “actual maximum” of the tractive force is based on the Curtius-Kniffler adhesion theory and can be adjusted by a following parameter of the ENG file: Wagon (OR_adhesion (Curtius_Kniffler (A B C D))), where A, B, C are coefficients of Curtius-Kniffler, Kother or similar formula. By default, Curtius-Kniffler is used.

$$F_{adhMAX} = weather\_coeff \cdot M \cdot 9{,}81 \cdot \left(\frac{A}{B + Speed[kmph]} + C \right)$$

This means that the maximum is related to the speed of the train, or to the weather conditions.

The “D” parameter is used in an advanced adhesion model and should always be 0.7.

There are some additional parameters in the “Force Information” HUD view. The axle/wheel is driven by the “Axle drive force” and braked by the “Axle brake force”. The “Axle out force” is the output force of the adhesion model (used to pull the train). To compute the model correctly the FPS rate needs to be divided by a “Solver dividing” value in a range from 1 to 50. By default, the Runge-Kutta4 solver is used to obtain the best results. When the “Solver dividing” value is higher than 40, in order to reduce CPU load the Euler-modified solver is used instead.

In some cases when the CPU load is high, the time step for the computation may become very high and the simulation may start to oscillate (the “Wheel slip” rate of change (in the brackets) becomes very high). There is a stability correction feature that modifies the dynamics of the adhesion characteristics. Higher instability can cause a huge wheel slip. You can use the “DebugResetWheelSlip” (“Ctrl+X” keys by default) command to reset the adhesion model. If you experience such behavior most of time, use the basic adhesion model instead by pressing “DebugToggleAdvancedAdhesion” (“Ctrl+Alt+X” keys by default).

Another option is to use a Moving average filter available in the Simulation Options. The higher the value, the more stable the simulation will be. However, the higher value causes slower dynamic response. The recommended range is between 10 and 50.

To match some of the real world features, the “Wheel slip” event can cause automatic zero throttle setting. Use the “Engine (ORTS (ORTSWheelSlipCausesThrottleDown))” Boolean value of the ENG file.

8.2 Engine – Classes of Motive Power

Open Rails software provides for different classes of engines: diesel, electric, steam and default. If needed, additional classes can be created with unique performance characteristics.

8.2.1 Diesel Locomotives in General

The diesel locomotive model in ORTS simulates the behavior of two basic types of diesel engine driven locomotives– diesel-electric and diesel-mechanical. The diesel engine model is the same for both types, but acts differently because of the different type of load. Basic controls (direction, throttle, dynamic brake, air brakes) are common across all classes of engines. Diesel engines can be started or stopped by pressing the START/STOP key (Y in English keyboards). The starting and stopping sequence is driven by a "starter" logic, which can be customized, or is estimated by the engine parameters.

8.2.1.1 Starting the Diesel Engine

To start the engine, simply press the START/STOP key once. The direction controller must be in the neutral position (otherwise, a warning message pops up). The engine RPM (revolutions per minute) will increase according to its speed curve parameters (described later). When the RPM reaches 90% of StartingRPM (67% of IdleRPM by default), the fuel starts to flow and the exhaust emission starts as well. RPM continues to increase up to StartingConfirmationRPM (110% of IdleRPM by default) and the demanded RPM is set to idle. The engine is now started and ready to operate.

8.2.1.2 Stopping the Diesel Engine

To stop the engine, press the START/STOP key once. The direction controller must be in the neutral position (otherwise, a warning message pops up). The fuel flow is cut off and the RPM will start to decrease according to its speed curve parameters. The engine is considered as fully stopped when RPM is zero. The engine can be restarted even while it is stopping (RPM is not zero).

8.2.1.3 Starting or Stopping 'helper' Diesel Engines

By pressing the Diesel helper START / STOP key (Shift + Y on English keyboards), the diesel engines of helper locomotives can be started or stopped. Also consider disconnecting the unit from the multiple-unit (MU) signals instead of stopping the engine (see here, "Toggle MU connection").

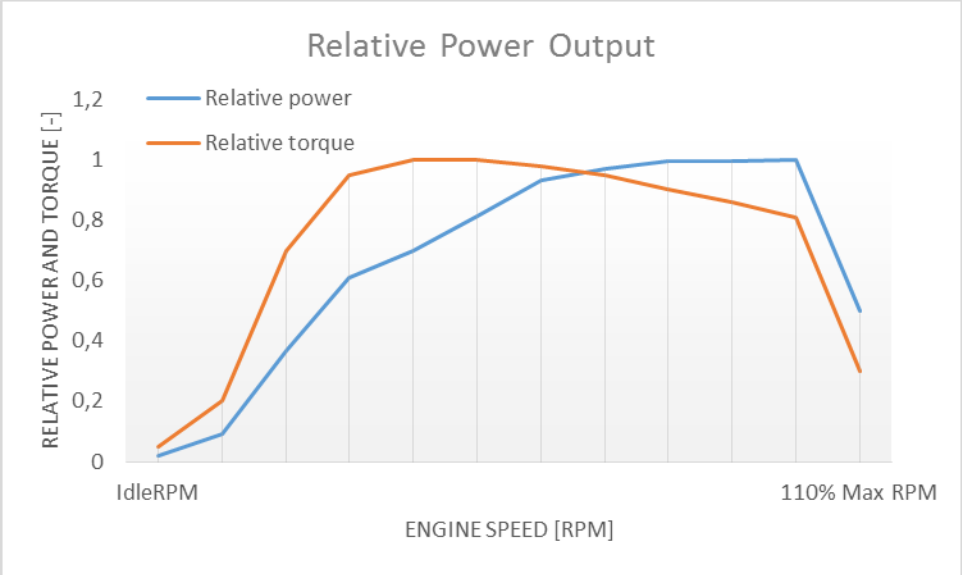
It is also possible to operate a locomotive with the own engine off and the helper's engine on.

8.2.1.4 ORTS Specific Diesel Engine Definition

If no ORTS specific definition is found, a single diesel engine definition is created based on the MSTS settings. Since MSTS introduces a model without any data crosscheck, the behavior of MSTS and ORTS diesel locomotives can be very different. In MSTS, MaxPower is not considered in the same way and you can get much "better" performance than expected. In ORTS, diesel engines cannot be overloaded.

No matter which engine definition is used, the diesel engine is defined by its load characteristics

(maximum output power vs. speed) for optimal fuel flow and/or mechanical characteristics (output torque vs. speed) for maximum fuel flow. The model computes output power / torque according to these characteristics and the throttle settings. If the characteristics are not defined (as they are in



the example below), they are calculated based on the MSTS data and common normalized characteristics.

In many cases the throttle vs. speed curve is customized because power vs. speed is not linear. A default linear throttle vs. speed characteristics is built in to avoid engine overloading at lower throttle settings. Nevertheless, it is recommended to adjust the table below to get more realistic behavior.

In ORTS, single or multiple engines can be set for one locomotive. In case there is more than one engine, other engines act like helpers' engines (start / stop controls, Shift+Y by default). The power of each active engine is added to the locomotive power. The number of such diesel engines is not limited.

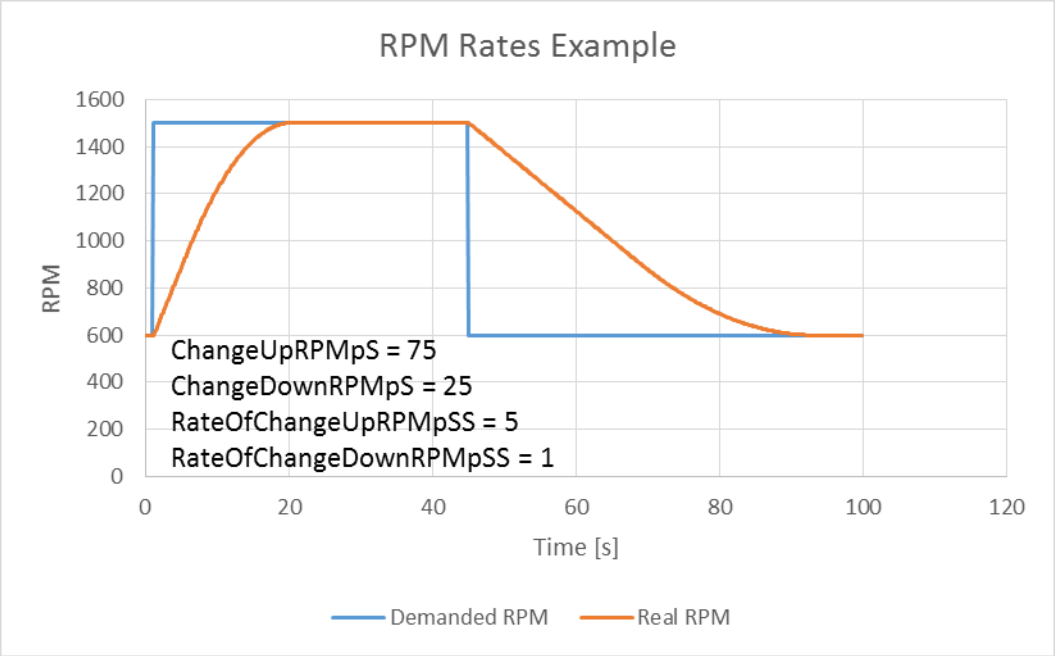
If the ORTS specific definition is used, each parameter is tracked and if one is missing, it is estimated from the MSTS specific settings. In case DieselPowerTab and/or DieselTorqueTab are missing, the missing table is computed based on the existing one, or both are filled by default tables.

Engine(…	
ORTSDieselEngines (2	Num of engines
Diesel (	
IdleRPM (510)	Idle RPM
MaxRPM (1250)	Maximal RPM
StartingRPM (400)	Starting RPM
StartingConfirmRPM (570)	Starting confirmation RPM
ChangeUpRPMpS (50)	Increasing change rate RPM / s
ChangeDownRPMpS (20)	Decreasing change rate RPM / s
RateOfChangeUpRPMpSS (5)	Jerk of ChangeUpRPMpS RPM / s^2

RateOfChangeDownRPMpSS (5) MaximalPower (300kW) IdleExhaust (5) MaxExhaust (50) ExhaustDynamics (10) ExhaustColor (00 fe) ExhaustTransientColor (00 00 00 00) DieselPowerTab (0 0 510 2000 520 5000 600 2000 800 70000 1000 100000 1100 200000 1200 280000 1250 300000) DieselConsumptionTab (0 0 510 10 1250 245) ThrottleRPMTab (0 510 5 520 10 600 20 700 50 1000 75 1200 100 1250)) Diesel (///the same as above or different))	Jerk of ChangeDownRPMpS RPM / s^2 Maximal output power Num of exhaust particles at IdleRPM Num of exhaust particles at MaxRPM Exhaust particle multiplier at transient Exhaust color at steady state Exhaust color at speeding up Diesel engine power tab RPM Power in Watts Diesel engine fuel consumption tab RPM Specific consumption g/kWh Diesel engine RPM vs. throttle tab Throttle % Demanded RPM

8.2.1.5 Diesel Engine Speed Behavior

The engine speed is calculated based on the RPM rate of change and its rate of change. The usual setting and the corresponding result is shown below. ChangeUpRPMpS means the slope of RPM, RateOfChangeUpRPMpSS means how fast the RPM approaches the demanded RPM.



8.2.1.6 Fuel Consumption

Following the MSTS model, ORTS computes the diesel engine fuel consumption based on .eng file parameters. The fuel flow and level are indicated by the HUD view. Final fuel consumption is adjusted according to the current diesel power output (load).

8.2.1.7 Diesel Exhaust

The diesel engine exhaust feature can be modified as needed. The main idea of this feature is based on the general combustion engine exhaust. When operating in a steady state, the color of the exhaust is given by the new ENG parameter “engine (ORTS (Diesel (ExhaustColor)))”.

The amount of particles emitted is given by a linear interpolation of the values of “engine(ORTS (Diesel (IdleExhaust)))” and “engine(ORTS (Diesel (MaxExhaust)))” in the range from 1 to 50. In a transient state, the amount of the fuel increases but the combustion is not optimal. Thus, the quantity of particles is temporarily higher: e.g. multiplied by the value of
“engine(ORTS (Diesel (ExhaustDynamics)))” and displayed with the color given by
“engine(ORTS(Diesel(ExhaustTransientColor)))”.
The format of the “color” value is (aarrggbb) where:
aa = intensity of light; rr = red color component; gg = green color component; bb = blue color component, and each component is in HEX number format (00 to ff).

8.2.1.8 Cooling System

ORTS introduces a simple cooling and oil system within the diesel engine model. The engine temperature is based on the output power and the cooling system output. A maximum value of 100°C can be reached with no impact on performance. It is just an indicator, but the impact on the engine’s performance will be implemented later. The oil pressure feature is simplified and the value is proportional to the RPM. There will be further improvements of the system later.

8.2.2 Diesel-Electric Locomotives

Diesel-electric locomotives are driven by electric traction motors supplied by a diesel-generator set. The gen-set is the only power source available, thus the diesel engine power also supplies auxiliaries and other loads. Therefore, the output power will always be lower than the diesel engine rated power.

In ORTS, the diesel-electric locomotive can use ORTSTractionCharacteristics or tables of ORTSMaxTractiveForceCurves to provide a better approximation to real world performance. If a table is not used, the tractive force is limited by MaxForce, MaxPower and MaxVelocity. The throttle setting is passed to the ThrottleRPMTab, where the RPM demand is selected. The output force increases with the Throttle setting, but the power follows maximal output power available (RPM dependent).

8.2.3 Diesel-Hydraulic Locomotives

Diesel-hydraulic locomotives are not implemented in ORTS. However, by using either ORTSTractionCharacteristics or ORTSMaxTractiveForceCurves tables, the desired performance can be achieved, when no gearbox is in use and the DieselEngineType is “electric”.

8.2.4 Diesel-Mechanical Locomotives

ORTS features a mechanical gearbox feature that mimics MSTS behavior, including automatic or manual shifting. Some features not well described in MSTS are not yet implemented, such as GearBoxBackLoadForce, GearBoxCoastingForce and GearBoxEngineBraking.

Output performance is very different compared with MSTS. The output force is computed using the diesel engine torque characteristics to get results that are more precise.

8.3 Electric Locomotives

At the present time, diesel and electric locomotive physics calculations use the default engine physics. Default engine physics simply uses the MaxPower and MaxForce parameters to determine the pulling power of the engine, modified by the Reverser and Throttle positions. The locomotive physics can be replaced by traction characteristics (speed in mps vs. force in Newtons) as described below.

Some OR-specific parameters are available in order to improve the realism of the electric system. Since the simulator does not know whether the pantograph in the 3D model is up or down, you can set some additional parameters in order to add a delay between the time when the command to raise the pantograph is given and when the pantograph is actually up.

In order to do this, you can write in the Wagon section of your .eng file or .wag file (since the pantograph may be on a wagon) this optional structure:

```
ORTSPantographs(
      Pantograph(             << This is going to be your first pantograph.
            Delay( 5 s )      << Example : a delay of 5 seconds
      )
      Pantograph(
            … parameters for the second pantograph …
      )
)
```

Other parameters will be added to this structure later, such as power limitations or speed restrictions.

By default, the circuit breaker of the train closes as soon as power is available on the pantograph. In real life, the circuit breaker does not close instantly, so you can add a delay with the optional parameter ORTSCircuitBreakerClosingDelay().

The power-on sequence time delay can be adjusted by the optional ORTSPowerOnDelay( ) value (for example : ORTSPowerOnDelay(5 s)) within the Engine section of the .eng file (value in seconds). The same delay for auxiliary systems can be adjusted by the optional parameter ORTSAuxPowerOnDelay( ).

A scripting interface is available in order to create a customized circuit breaker or a customized power supply system (it will be useful later when the key bindings will be customizable for each locomotive).

The power status is indicated by the “Electric power” value in the HUD view. The pantographs of all locomotives in a consist are triggered by “Control Pantograph First” and “Control Pantograph Second” commands (“P” and “Shift+P” by default). The status of the pantographs is indicated by the “Pantographs” value in the HUD view.

8.4 Steam Locomotives

8.4.1 General Introduction to Steam Locomotives

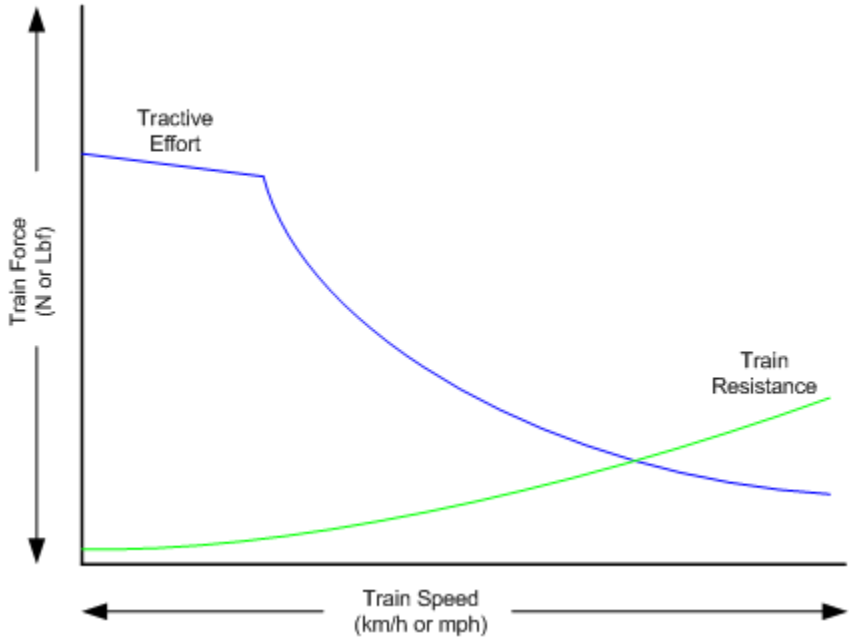
8.4.1.1 Principles of Train Movement

Key Points to Remember:

- Steam locomotive tractive effort must be greater than the train resistance forces.
- Train resistance is impacted by the train itself, curves, gradients, tunnels, etc.
- Tractive effort reduces with speed, and will reach a point where it "equals" the train resistance, and thus the train will not be able to go any faster.
- This point will vary as the train resistance varies due to changing track conditions.
- Theoretical tractive effort is determined by the boiler pressure, cylinder size, drive wheel diameters, and will vary between locomotives.
- Low Factors of Adhesion will cause the locomotive's driving wheels to slip.

Forces Impacting Train Movement

The steam locomotive is a heat engine which converts ***heat*** energy generated through the burning of fuel, such as coal, into heat and ultimately steam. The steam is then used to do ***work*** by injecting the steam into the cylinders to drive the wheels around and move the locomotive forward. To understand how a train will move forward, it is necessary to understand the principal mechanical forces acting on the train. The diagram below shows the two key forces affecting the ability of a train to move.



The first force is the tractive effort produced by the locomotive, whilst the second force is the

resistance presented by the train. Whenever the tractive effort is greater than the train resistance the train will continue to move forward; once the resistance exceeds the tractive effort, then the train will start to slow down, and eventually will stop moving forward.

The sections below describe in more detail the forces of tractive effort and train resistance.

Train Resistance

The movement of the train is opposed by a number of different forces which are collectively grouped together to form the "train resistance".

The main resistive forces are as follows:

i) Journal or Bearing resistance (or friction)

ii) Air resistance

The above two values of resistance are modelled through the Davis formulas, and only apply on straight level track.

iii) Gradient resistance – trains travelling up hills will experience greater resistive forces then those operating on level track.

iv) Curve resistance – applies when the train is traveling around a curve, and will be impacted by the curve radius, speed, and fixed wheel base of the rolling stock.

v) Tunnel resistance - applies when a train is travelling through a tunnel.

Tractive Effort

Tractive Effort is created by the action of the steam against the pistons, which, through the media of rods, crossheads, etc., cause the wheels to revolve and the engine to advance.

Tractive Effort is a function of mean effective pressure of the steam cylinder and is expressed by following formula for a simple locomotive. Geared and compound locomotives will have slightly different formula.

$$\mathbf{TE = Cyl/2 \times (M.E.P. \times d2 \times s) / D}$$

Where:

Cyl = number of cylinders

TE = Tractive Effort (lbf)

M.E.P. = mean effective pressure of cylinder (psi)

D = diameter of cylinder (in)

S = stroke of cylinder piston (in)

D = diameter of drive wheels (in)

Theoretical Tractive Effort

To allow the comparison of different locomotives, as well as determining their relative pulling ability, a theoretical approximate value of tractive effort is calculated using the boiler gauge pressure and includes a factor to reduce the value of M.E.P.

Thus our formula from above becomes

$$\mathbf{TE = Cyl/2 \times (0.85 \times BP \times d2 \times s) / D}$$

Where:

BP = Boiler Pressure (gauge pressure - psi)

0.85 – factor to account for losses in the engine, typically values between 0.7 and 0.85 were used by different manufacturers and railway companies.

Factor of Adhesion

The factor of adhesion describes the likelihood of the locomotive slipping when force is applied to the wheels and rails, and is the ratio of the starting Tractive Effort to the weight on the driving wheels of the locomotive.

$$\mathbf{FoA = Wd / TE}$$

Where:

FoA = Factor of Adhesion

TE = Tractive Effort (lbs)

Wd = Weight on Driving Wheels (lbs)

Typically the Factor of Adhesion should ideally be between 4.0 & 5.0 for steam locomotives. Values below this range will typically result in slippage on the rail.

Indicated HorsePower (IHP)

Indicated Horsepower is the theoretical power produced by a steam locomotive.

The generally accepted formula for Indicated Horsepower is

$$\mathbf{I.H.P. = Cyl/2 \times (M.E.P. \times L \times A \times N) / 33000}$$

Where:

IHP = Indicated Horsepower (hp)

Cyl = number of cylinders

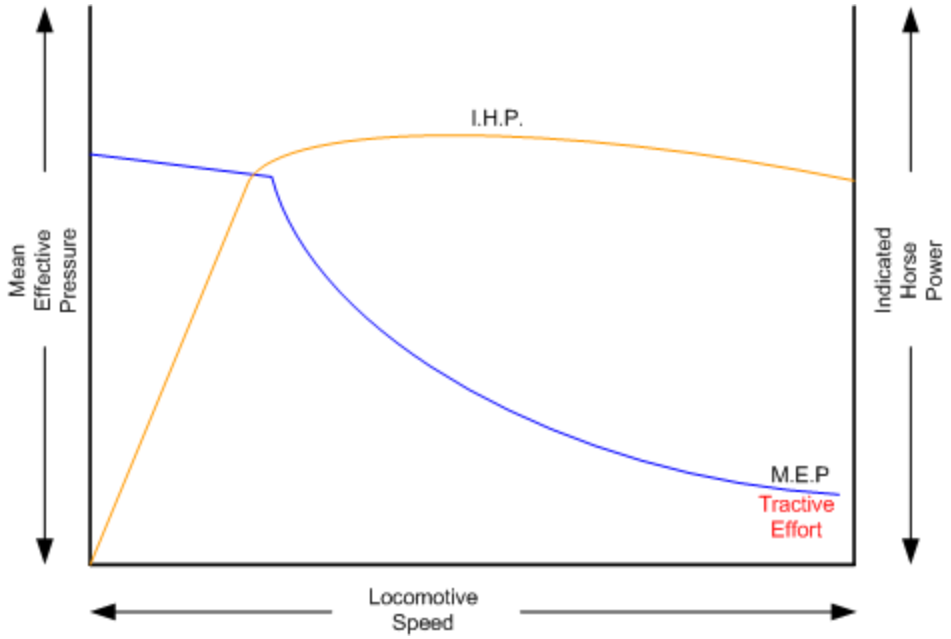
M.E.P. = mean effective pressure of cylinder (psi)

L = stroke of cylinder piston (ft)

A = area of cylinder (sq in)

N = number of cylinder piston strokes per min (NB: two piston strokes for every wheel revolution)

As shown in the diagram below, IHP increases with speed, until it reaches a maximum value. This value is determined by the cylinder's ability to maintain an efficient throughput of steam, as well as for the boiler's ability to maintain sufficient steam generation to match the steam usage by the cylinders.



Hauling Capacity of Locomotives

Thus it can be seen that the hauling capacity is determined by the summation of the tractive effort and the train resistance.

Different locomotives were designed to produce different values of tractive effort, and therefore the loads that they were able to haul would be determined by the track conditions, principally the ruling gradient for the section, and the load or train weight. Therefore most railway companies and locomotive manufacturers developed load tables for the different locomotives depending upon their theoretical tractive efforts.

The table below is a sample showing the hauling capacity of an American (4-4-0) locomotive from the Baldwin Locomotive Company catalogue, listing the relative loads on level track and other grades as the cylinder size, drive wheel diameter, and weight of the locomotive is varied.

CODE WORD	Class	Cylinders Diam. Stroke Inches	Diameter Driving Wheels Inches	Boiler Pressure Pounds per Square Inch	Rated Tractive Force Pounds	Weight in Working Order Pounds		Wheel Base		Capacity Tender for Water 8½-lb. gallons	Load in Tons (2000 Pounds) of Cars and Lading								
						On all Driving Wheels	Total	Of Driving Wheels	Total		On a Level	On a Grade per Mile of							
												26.4 ft. or ½ %	52.8 ft. or 1 %	79.2 ft. or 1½ %	105.6 ft. or 2 %	158.4 ft. or 3 %	211.2 ft. or 4 %	264.0 ft. or 5 %
Matchlock.....	8-28 C	17 x 24	66	180	16,080	70,000	102,000	7′ 6″	21′ 5″	3500	1720	805	485	335	245	145	90	60
Matelas.....	8-30 C	18 x 24	66	180	18,020	77,000	115,000	7′ 6″	21′ 6″	4000	1930	900	545	375	275	165	105	65
Matelasser....	8-32 C	19 x 24	66	180	20,070	85,000	128,000	8′ 0″	22′ 11″	4500	2140	1000	605	415	305	185	115	75
Matellarum....	8-34 C	20 x 24	66	180	22,260	92,000	136,000	8′ 6″	23′ 4″	5000	2315	1085	655	450	330	200	125	80

Typically the ruling gradient is defined as the maximum uphill grade facing a train in a particular section of the route, and this grade would typically determine the maximum permissible load that the train could haul in this section. The permissible load would vary depending upon the direction of travel of the train.

8.4.1.2 Elements of Steam Locomotive Operation

A steam locomotive is a very complex piece of machinery that has many component parts, each of which will influence the performance of the locomotive in different ways. Even at the peak of its development in the middle of the 20th century, the locomotive designer had at their disposal only a series of factors and simple formulae to describe its performance. Once designed and built, the performance of the locomotive was measured and adjusted by empirical means, i.e. by testing and experimentation on the locomotive. Even locomotives within the same class could exhibit differences in performance.

A simplified description of a steam locomotive is provided below to help understand some of the key basics of its operation.

As indicated above, the steam locomotive is a heat engine which converts fuel (coal, wood, oil, etc.) to heat; this is then used to do work by driving the pistons to turn the wheels. The operation of a steam locomotive can be thought of in terms of the following broadly defined components:

- Boiler and Fire (Heat conversion)
- Cylinder (Work done)

Boiler and Fire (Heat conversion)

The amount of work that a locomotive can do will be determined by the amount of steam that can be produced (evaporated) by the boiler.

Boiler steam production is typically dependent upon the Grate Area, and the Boiler Evaporation Area.

Grate Area - the amount of heat energy released by the burning of the fuel is dependent upon the size of the grate area, draught of air flowing across the grate to support fuel combustion, fuel calorific value, and the amount of fuel that can be fed to the fire (a human fireman can only shovel so much coal in an hour). Some locomotives may have had good sized grate areas, but were 'poor steamers' because they had small draught capabilities.

Boiler Evaporation Area - consisted of the part of the firebox in contact with the boiler and the heat tubes running through the boiler. This area determined the amount of heat that could be transferred to the water in the boiler. As a rule of thumb a boiler could produce approximately 12-15lbs/h of steam per sq. ft. of evaporation area.

Boiler Superheater Area - Typically modern steam locomotives are superheated, whereas older locomotives used only saturated steam. Superheating is the process of putting more heat into the steam without changing the pressure. This provided more energy in the steam and allowed the locomotive to produce more work, but with a reduction in steam and fuel usage. In other words a superheated locomotive tended to be more efficient then a saturated locomotive.

Cylinder (Work done)

To drive the locomotive forward, steam was injected into the cylinder which pushed the piston backwards and forwards, and this in turn rotated the drive wheels of the locomotive. Typically the larger the drive wheels, the faster the locomotive was able to travel.

The faster the locomotive travelled the more steam that was needed to drive the cylinders. The

steam able to be produced by the boiler was typically limited to a finite value depending upon the design of the boiler. In addition the ability to inject and exhaust steam from the cylinder also tended to reach finite limits as well. These factors typically combined to place limits on the power of a locomotive depending upon the design factors used.

8.4.1.3 Locomotive Types

During the course of their development, many different types of locomotives were developed, some of the more common categories are as follows:

- Simple - simple locomotives had only a single expansion cycle in the cylinder
- Compound - locomotives had multiple steam expansion cycles and typically had a high and low pressure cylinder.
- Saturated - steam was heated to only just above the boiling point of water.
- Superheated - steam was heated well above the boiling point of water, and therefore was able to generate more work in the locomotive.
- Geared - locomotives were geared to increase the tractive effort produced by the locomotive, this however reduced the speed of operation of the locomotive.

Superheated Locomotives

In the early 1900s, superheaters were fitted to some locomotives. As the name was implied a superheater was designed to raise the steam temperature well above the normal saturated steam temperature. This had a number of benefits for locomotive engineers in that it eliminated condensation of the steam in the cylinder, thus reducing the amount of steam required to produce the same amount of work in the cylinders. This resulted in reduced water and coal consumption in the locomotive, and generally improved the efficiency of the locomotive.

Superheating was achieved by installing a superheater element that effectively increased the heating area of the locomotive.

Geared Locomotives

In industrial type railways, such as those used in the logging industry, spurs to coal mines were often built to very cheap standards. As a consequence, depending upon the terrain, they were often laid with sharp curves and steep gradients compared to normal "main line standards".

Typical "main line" rod type locomotives couldn't be used on these lines due to their long fixed wheelbase (coupled wheels) and their relatively low tractive effort was no match for the steep gradients. Thus geared locomotives found their niche in railway practice.

Geared locomotives typically used bogie wheelsets, which allowed the rigid wheelbase to be reduced compared to that of rod type locomotives, thus allowing the negotiation of tight curves. In addition the gearing allowed an increase of their tractive effort to handle the steeper gradients compared to main line tracks.

Whilst the gearing allowed more tractive effort to be produced, it also meant that the "maximum" piston speed was reached at a lower track speed.

As suggested above, the maximum track speed would depend upon loads and track conditions.

As these types of lines were lightly laid, excessive speeds could result in derailments, etc.

The three principal types of geared locomotives used were:

- Shay Locomotives
- Climax
- Heisler

8.4.2 Steam Locomotive Operation

To successfully drive a steam locomotive it is necessary to consider the performance of the following elements:

- Boiler and Fire (Heat conversion)
- Cylinder (Work done)

For more details on these elements, refer to the “Elements of Steam Locomotive Operation”

Summary of Driving Tips

Wherever possible, when running normally, have the regulator at 100%, and use the reverser to adjust steam usage and speed.

Avoid jerky movements when starting or running the locomotive, thus reducing the chances of breaking couplers.

When starting always have the reverser fully wound up, and open the regulator slowly and smoothly, without slipping the wheels.

8.4.2.1 Open Rails Steam Functionality (Fireman)

The Open Rails Steam locomotive functionality provides two operational options:

1. Automatic Fireman (Computer Controlled):
   In Automatic or Computer Controlled Fireman mode all locomotive firing and boiler management is done by Open Rails, leaving the player to concentrate on driving the locomotive. Only the basic controls such as the regulator and throttle are available to the player.
2. Manual Fireman:
   In Manual Fireman mode all locomotive firing and boiler management must be done by the player. All of the boiler management and firing controls, such as blower, injector, fuel rate, are available to the player, and can be adjusted accordingly.

A full listing of the keyboard controls for use when in manual mode is provided on the **Keyboard** tab of the Open Rails Options panel.

Use the keys Crtl+F to switch between Manual and Automatic firing modes.

8.4.2.2 Hot or Cold Start

The locomotive can be started either in a hot or cold mode. Hot mode simulates a locomotive which has a full head of steam and is ready for duty.

Cold mode simulates a locomotive that has only just had the fire raised, and still needs to build up to full boiler pressure, before having full power available.

This function can be selected through the Open Rails options menu on the Simulation tab.

8.4.2.3 Main Steam Locomotive Controls

This section will describe the control and management of the steam locomotive based upon the assumption that the Automatic fireman is engaged. The following controls are those typically used by the driver in this mode of operation:

Cylinder Cocks - allows water condensation to be exhausted from the cylinders.

(Open Rails Keys: toggle **C**)

Regulator - controls the pressure of the steam injected into the cylinders.

(Open Rails Keys: **D =** increase, **A =** decrease)

Reverser - controls the valve gear and when the steam is "cutoff". Typically it is expressed as a fraction of the cylinder stroke.

(Open Rails Keys: **W =** increase, **S =** decrease). Continued operation of the **W** or **S** key will eventually reverse the direction of travel for the locomotive.

Brake - controls the operation of the brakes.

(Open Rails Keys: ‘ **=** increase, **; =** decrease)

Recommended Option Settings

For added realism of the performance of the steam locomotive, it is suggested that the following settings be considered for selection in the Open Rails options menu:

- Break couplers
- Curve speed dependent
- Curve resistance speed
- Hot start
- Tunnel resistance dependent

NB: Refer to the relevant sections of the manual for more detailed description of these functions.

Locomotive Starting

Open the cylinder cocks. They are to remain open until the engine has traversed a distance of about an average train length, consistent with safety.

The locomotive should always be started in full gear (reverser up as high as possible), according to the direction of travel, and kept there for the first few turns of the driving wheels, before adjusting the reverser.

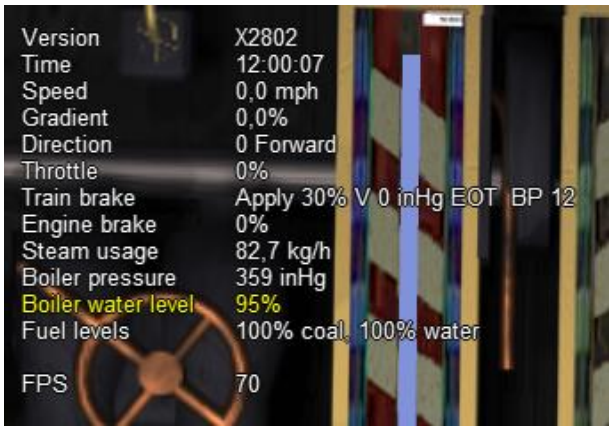
After ensuring that all brakes are released, open the regulator sufficiently to move the train, care should be exercised to prevent slipping; do not open the regulator too much before the locomotive has gathered speed. Severe slipping causes excessive wear and tear on the locomotive, disturbance of the fire bed and blanketing of the spark arrestor. If slipping does occur, the regulator should be closed as appropriate, and if necessary sand applied.

Also, when starting, a slow even increase of power will allow the couplers all along the train to be gradually extended, and therefore reduce the risk of coupler breakages.

Locomotive Running

Theoretically, when running, the regulator should always be fully open and the speed of the locomotive controlled, as desired, by the reverser. For economical use of steam, it is also desirable to operate at the lowest cut-off values as possible, so the reverser should be operated at low values, especially running at high speeds.

When running a steam locomotive keep an eye on the following key parameters in the Heads up Display (HUD – **F5**) as they will give the driver an indication of the current status and performance of the locomotive with regard to the heat conversion (Boiler and Fire) and work done (Cylinder) processes. Also bear in mind the above driving tips.



- Direction – indicates the setting on the reverser and the direction of travel. The value is in per cent, so for example a value of 50 indicates that the cylinder is cutting off at 0.5 of the stroke.
- Throttle – indicates the setting of the regulator in per cent.
- Steam usage – these values represent the current steam usage per hour.
- Boiler Pressure – this should be maintained close to the maximum working pressure of the locomotive.
- Boiler water level – indicates the level of water in the boiler. Under operation in Automatic Fireman mode, the fireman should manage this.
- Fuel levels– indicate the coal and water levels of the locomotive.

For information on the other parameters, such as the brakes, refer to the relevant sections in the manual.

For the driver of the locomotive the first two steam parameters are the key ones to focus on, as operating the locomotive for extended periods of time with steam usage in excess of the steam generation value will result in declining boiler pressure. If this is allowed to continue the locomotive will ultimately lose boiler pressure, and will no longer be able to continue to pull its load.

Steam usage will increase with the speed of the locomotive, so the driver will need to adjust the regulator, reverser, and speed of the locomotive to ensure that optimal steam pressure is maintained. However, a point will finally be reached where the locomotive cannot go any faster without the steam usage exceeding the steam generation. This point determines the maximum speed of the locomotive and will vary depending upon load and track conditions

.

8.4.3 Steam Locomotive – Physics Parameters for Optimal Operation

for content developers:

8.4.3.1 Required Input ENG and WAG File Parameters

The OR Steam Locomotive Model (SLM) should work with default MSTS files; however optimal performance will only be achieved if the following settings are applied within the ENG file. ***The following list only describes the parameters associated with the SLM, other parameters such as brakes, lights, etc. still need to be included in the file*.** As always, make sure that you keep a backup of the original MSTS file.

Open Rails has been designed to do most of the calculations for the modeler, and typically only the key parameters are required to be included in the ENG or WAG file. The parameters shown in the "Locomotive performance Adjustments" section should be included only where a specific performance outcome is required, since "default" parameters should provide a satisfactory result.

When creating and adjusting ENG or WAG files, a series of tests should be undertaken to ensure that the performance matches the actual real-world locomotive as closely as possible. For further information on testing, as well as some suggested test tools, go to this site.

NB: These parameters are subject to change as Open Rails continues to develop.

Parameter	ENG or WAG	Description	Recommended Input Units	Suggested settings	New or Existing	Typical Examples
General Information						
ORTSSteamLocomotiveType (x)	ENG	Describes the type of locomotive	Text	Simple, Compound, Geared	New	ORTSSteamLocomotiveType (Simple)
WheelRadius (x)	ENG	Radius of drive wheels	Distance – m, in	As per loco specs	Existing	WheelRadius (0.648m) WheelRadius (36in)
Boiler Parameters						
ORTSSteamBoilerType (x)	ENG	Describes the type of boiler	Text	Saturated, Superheated	New	ORTSSteamBoilerType (Saturated)

Parameter	ENG or WAG	Description	Recommended Input Units	Suggested settings	New or Existing	Typical Examples
BoilerVolume (x)	ENG	Volume of boiler	Volume – cu ft, cu m	This parameter is not overly critical, and where an actual value is not available, use EvapArea / 8.3 as an approximation	Existing	BoilerVolume ("220*(ft^3)") BoilerVolume ("110*(m^3)")
ORTSEvaporationArea (x)	ENG	Boiler evaporation area.	Area – sq ft, sq m	As per loco specs	New	ORTSEvaporationArea ("2198*(ft^2)") ORTSEvaporationArea ("194*(m^2)")
MaxBoilerPressure (x)	ENG	Max boiler working pressure (Gauge pressure)	Pressure – psi, kPa	As per loco specs	Existing	MaxBoilerPressure (200psi) MaxBoilerPressure (200kPa)
ORTSSuperheatArea (x)	ENG	Superheating heating area	Area – sq ft, sq m	As per loco specs	New	ORTSSuperheatArea ("2198*(ft^2)") ORTSSuperheatArea ("194*(m^2)")
Locomotive Tender Info						
MaxTenderWaterMass (x)	ENG	Water in tender	Mass – lbs, kg 1 uk gal = 10lb 1 us gal = 8.34lb	As per loco specs	Existing	MaxTenderWaterMass (36500lb) MaxTenderWaterMass (16000kg)
MaxTenderCoalMass (x)	ENG	Coal in tender	Mass – lbs, kg	As per loco specs	Existing	MaxTenderCoalMass (13440lb) MaxTenderCoalMass (6000kg)
Fire						
ORTSGrateArea (x)	ENG	Locomotive fire grate area	Area – sq ft, sq m	As per loco specs	New	ORTSGrateArea ("2198*(ft^2)") ORTSGrateArea ("194*(m^2)")
ORTSFuelCalorific (x)	ENG	Calorific value of fuel	Energy Density – btu/lb, kj/kg	Internet search – for coal use a default value of 13700 btu/lb	New	ORTSFuelCalorific (13700btu/lb) ORTSFuelCalorific (33400kj/kg)
ORTSSteamFiremanMaxPossibleFiringRate(x)	ENG	Maximum fuel rate that fireman can shovel in an hour	Mass – lbs, kg	Use following as defaults: UK – 3000lb/h US – 5000lb/h Aus – 4200lb/h	New – alternate value to MSTS	ORTSSteamFiremanMaxPossibleFiringRate (4200lb/h) ORTSSteamFiremanMaxPossibleFiringRate (2000kg/h)

Parameter	ENG or WAG	Description	Recommended Input Units	Suggested settings	New or Existing	Typical Examples
SteamFiremanIsMechanicalStoker (x)	ENG	Indicates that the locomotive has a mechanical stoker, and hence a large rate of coal feed.	Factor	0 = no stoker 1 = stoker	Existing	SteamFiremanIsMechanicalStoker (1.0)
Steam Cylinder						
NumCylinders (x)	ENG	Number of steam cylinders	Factor	As per loco specs	Existing	NumCylinders (2)
CylinderStroke (x)	ENG	Length of cylinder stroke	Distance – m, in	As per loco specs	Existing	CylinderStroke (26in) CylinderStroke (0.8m)
CylinderDiameter (x)	ENG	Diameter of cylinder	Distance – m, in	As per loco specs	Existing	CylinderDiameter (21in) CylinderDiameter (0.6m)
LPNumCylinders (x)	ENG	Number of steam LP cylinders (Compound locomotive only)	Factor	As per loco specs	Existing	LPNumCylinders (2)
LPCylinderStroke (x)	ENG	Length of LP cylinder stroke (Compound locomotive only)	Distance – m, in	As per loco specs	Existing	LPCylinderStroke (26in) LPCylinderStroke (0.8m)
LPCylinderDiameter (x)	ENG	Diameter of LP cylinder (Compound locomotive only)	Distance – m, in	As per loco specs	Existing	LPCylinderDiameter (21in) LPCylinderDiameter (0.6m)
Friction						
ORTSDavis_A (x)	WAG	Davis A – journal or roller bearing + mechanical friction	N, lbf	As per loco specs, use FCalc to calculate	New	ORTSDavis_A (502.8N) ORTSDavis_A (502.8lb)
ORTSDavis_B (x)	WAG	Davis A – flange friction	Nm/s, lbf/mph	As per loco specs, use FCalc to calculate	New	ORTSDavis_B (1.5465Nm/s) ORTSDavis_B (1.5465lbf/mph)

Parameter	ENG or WAG	Description	Recommended Input Units	Suggested settings	New or Existing	Typical Examples
ORTSDavis_C (x)	WAG	Davis A – air resistance friction	Nm/s^2, lbf/mph^2	As per loco specs, use FCalc to calculate	New	ORTSDavis_C (1.43Nm/s^2) ORTSDavis_C (1.43lbf/mph^2)
ORTSBearingType (x)	WAG	Bearing type.	Roller, Friction, Low	Roller – defaults to friction bearing.	New	ORTSBearingType (Roller) **NB: leave out if not known, or a friction bearing**
ORTSDriveWheelWeight (x)	ENG	Total weight on the locomotive driving wheels	Mass	As per loco specs	New	ORTSDriveWheelWeight (2.12t) **NB: can be left out if not known**
Curve Speed Limit						
ORTSUnbalancedSuperElevation (x)	WAG	Determines the amount of Cant Deficiency (Unbalanced SuperElevation) applied to carriage	Distance	As per vehicle specs	New	ORTSUnbalancedSuperElevation (3in) ORTSUnbalancedSuperElevation (0.075m) **NB: can be left out if not known**
ORTSTrackGauge(x)	WAG	Track gauge	Distance	As per railway specs	New	ORTSTrackGauge(4ft 8.5in) ORTSTrackGauge(4.708ft) ORTSTrackGauge(1.435m) **NB: can be left out if not known**

Parameter	ENG or WAG	Description	Recommended Input Units	Suggested settings	New or Existing	Typical Examples
CentreOfGravity (x, y, z)	WAG	Defines the centre of gravity of a locomotive or wagon	Distance	As per vehicle specs	Existing	CentreOfGravity (0.0m, 1.8m, 0.0m) CentreOfGravity (0.0ft, 5.0ft, 0.0ft) **NB: can be left out if not known**
Curve Friction						
ORTSRigidWheelBase (x)	WAG	Rigid wheel base of vehicle	Distance	As per vehicle specs		ORTSRigidWheelBase (5ft 6in) ORTSRigidWheelBase (3.37m) **NB: can be left out if not known**
Locomotive Gearing (Only required if locomotive is geared)						
ORTSSteamGearRatio (a, b)	ENG	Ratio of gears	Value	As per loco specs	New	ORTSSteamGearRatio (2.55, 0.0)
ORTSSteamMaxGearPistonRate (x)	ENG	Max speed of piston in ft/min	Value only	As per loco specs	New	ORTSSteamMaxGearPistonRate (650)
ORTSSteamGearType (x)	ENG	Indicates whether the locomotive has fixed gearing or selectable gearing	Fixed, Select	As per loco specs	New	ORTSSteamGearType (Fixed)
Locomotive Performance Adjustments (Optional only - to be used by experienced modellers)						
ORTSBoilerEavporationRate (x)	ENG	Multiplication factor for adjusting maximum boiler steam output	Factor	As per loco specs (between 10 -15)	New	ORTSBoilerEavporationRate (15.0) **NB: leave out if not used**
ORTSBurnRate (x, y)	ENG	Tabular input describing the rate of coal combusted to the rate of steam generation	X – steam produced in lbs, y – coal combusted in Kg, series of x & y values	As per loco specs (	New	**NB: leave out if not used**

Parameter	ENG or WAG	Description	Recommended Input Units	Suggested settings	New or Existing	Typical Examples
ORTSCylinderEfficiencyRate (x)	ENG	Multiplication factor for steam cylinder (force) output	Factor	As per loco specs (unlimited)	New	ORTSCylinderEfficiencyRate (1.0) **NB: leave out if not used**
ORTSBoilerEfficiency (x, y)	ENG	Tabular input describing the efficiency of the boiler against coal combustion	x – coal burning rate per hour (lbs/ft^2), y – boiler efficiency, series of x & y values.	As per loco specs	New	**NB: leave out if not used**
ORTSCylinderExhaustOpen (x)	ENG	Point at which the cylinder exhaust port opens	Factor	As per loco specs (between 0.1 – 0.95)	New	ORTSCylinderExhaustOpen (10.0) **NB: leave out if not used**
ORTSCylinderPortOpening (x)	ENG	Size of cylinder port opening	Factor	As per loco specs (between 0.05 – 0.12)	New	ORTSCylinderPortOpening (0.085) **NB: leave out if not used**
ORTSCylinderInitialPressureDrop (x, y)	ENG	Tabular input describing the initial pressure drop as locomotive speed increases	x – wheel speed in rpm, y - pressure drop factor, series of x & y values.	As per loco specs	New	**NB: leave out if not used**
ORTSCylinderBackPressure (x, y)	ENG	Tabular input describing the Increase in back pressure as locomotive indicated horsepower increases	x – indicated HP, y – backpressure (atm psi), series of x & y values.	As per loco specs	New	ORTSCylinderBackPressure (10.0) **NB: leave out if not used**

Notes – Existing – means a parameter in original MSTS or added through MSTS BIN
New – means added as part of OR development

Possible Locomotive Reference Info:

i) Steam Locomotive Data - http://orion.math.iastate.edu/jdhsmith/term/slindex.htm
ii) Example Wiki Locomotive Data - http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SR_Merchant_Navy_class

Testing Resources for Open Rails Steam Locomotives – http://coalstonewcastle.com.au/physics/

8.5 Engines – Multiple Units in Same Consist or AI Engines

In an OR player train one locomotive is controlled by the player, while the other units are controlled by default by the train's MU (multiple unit) signals for braking and throttle position, etc. The player-controlled locomotive generates the MU signals which are passed along to every unit in the train. For AI trains, the AI software directly generates the MU signals, i.e. there is no player-controlled locomotive. In this way, all engines use the same physics code for power and friction.

This software model will ensure that non-player controlled engines will behave exactly the same way as player controlled ones.

8.6 Open Rails Braking

Open Rails software has implemented its own braking physics in the current release. It is based on the Westinghouse 26C and 26F air brake and controller system. Open Rails braking will parse the type of braking from the .eng file to determine if the braking physics uses passenger or freight standards, self-lapping or not. This is controlled within the Options menu as shown in General Options above.

Selecting Graduated Release Air Brakes in *Menu* > *Options* allows partial release of the brakes. Some 26C brake valves have a cut-off valve that has three positions: passenger, freight and cut-out. Checked is equivalent to passenger standard and unchecked is equivalent to freight standard.

The *Graduated Release Air Brakes* option controls two different features. If the train brake controller has a self-lapping notch and the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* box is checked, then the amount of brake pressure can be adjusted up or down by changing the control in this notch. If the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* option is not checked, then the brakes can only be increased in this notch and one of the release positions is required to release the brakes.

Another capability controlled by the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* checkbox is the behavior of the brakes on each car in the train. If the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* box is checked, then the brake cylinder pressure is regulated to keep it proportional to the difference between the emergency reservoir pressure and the brake pipe pressure. If the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* box is not checked and the brake pipe pressure rises above the auxiliary reservoir pressure, then the brake cylinder pressure is released completely at a rate determined by the retainer setting.

The following brake types are implemented in OR:

- Vacuum single
- Air single-pipe
- Air twin-pipe
- EP (Electro-pneumatic)
- Single-transfer-pipe (air and vacuum)

The operation of air single-pipe brakes is described in general below.

The auxiliary reservoir needs to be charged by the brake pipe and, depending on the WAG file parameters setting, this can delay the brake release. When the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* box is not checked, the auxiliary reservoir is also charged by the emergency reservoir (until both are equal and then both are charged from the pipe). When the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* box is checked, the auxiliary reservoir is only charged from the brake pipe. The Open Rails software implements it this way because the emergency reservoir is used as the source of the reference pressure for regulating the brake cylinder pressure.

The end result is that you will get a slower release when the *Graduated Release Air Brakes* box is checked. This should not be an issue with two pipe air brake systems because the second pipe can be the source of air for charging the auxiliary reservoirs.

Open Rails software has modeled most of this graduated release car brake behavior based on the 26F control valve, but this valve is designed for use on locomotives. The valve uses a control reservoir to maintain the reference pressure and Open Rails software simply replaced the control reservoir with the emergency reservoir.

Increasing the Brake Pipe Charging Rate *(PSI/Second)* value controls the charging rate. Increasing the value will reduce the time required to recharge the train; while decreasing the value will slow the charging rate. However, this might be limited by the train brake controller parameter settings in the ENG file. The brake pipe pressure cannot go up faster than that of the equalization reservoir.

The default value, 21, should cause the recharge time from a full set to be about 1 minute for every 12 cars. If the *Brake Pipe Charging Rate (PSI/Second)* value is set to 1000, the pipe pressure gradient features will be disabled and will also disable some but not all of the other new brake features.

Brake system charging time depends on the train length as it should, but at the moment there is no modeling of main reservoirs and compressors.

8.6.1 Using the F5 HUD Expanded Braking Information

This helps users of Open Rails to understand the status of braking within the game and assists in realistically coupling and uncoupling cars. Open Rails braking physics is more realistic than MSTS, as it models the connection, charging and exhaust of brake lines.

When coupling to a static consist, note that the brake line for the newly added cars normally does not have any pressure. This is because the train brake line/hose has not yet been connected. The last columns of each line shows the condition of the air brake hose connections of each unit in the consist.

BRAKE INFORMATION
Main reservoir 135 psi

Car	Type	BrkCyl	BrkPipe	AuxRes	ErgRes	MRPipe	RetValve	TripleValve	Handbrk	Conn	AnglCock BleedOff
0 - 0	1P	11 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release		T	A- B+
0 - 1	1P	11 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release		I	A+ B-
32884 - 0	1P	0 psi	0 psi	0 psi	0 psi			Emergency	100%	T	A+ B+
32884 - 1	1P	0 psi	0 psi	0 psi	0 psi			Emergency	100%	T	A+ B+
32884 - 2	1P	0 psi	0 psi	0 psi	0 psi			Emergency	100%	T	A+ B+

The columns under “AnglCock” describe the state of the “Angle Cock”, a manually operated valve in each of the brake hoses of a car: A is the cock at the front, B is the cock at the rear of the car. The symbol “+” indicates that the cock is open and the symbol “-“ that it is closed. The column

headed by “T” indicates if the hose on the locomotive or car is interconnected: “T” means that there is no connection, “I” means it is connected to the air pressure line. If the angle cocks of two consecutive cars are B+ and A+ respectively, they will pass the main air hose pressure between the two cars. In this example note that the locomotive air brake lines start with A- (closed) and end with B- (closed) before the air hoses are connected to the newly coupled cars. All of the newly coupled cars in this example have their angle cocks open, including those at the ends, so their brake pressures are zero. This will be reported as “Emergency” state.

8.6.1.1 Coupling Cars

Also note that, immediately after coupling, you may also find that the handbrakes of the newly added cars have their handbrakes set to 100% (see column headed “Handbrk”). Pressing “Shift+;” (Shift plus semicolon in English keyboards) will release all the handbrakes on the consist as shown below. Pressing “Shift+'” (Shift plus apostrophe on English keyboards) will set all of the handbrakes. Cars without handbrakes will not have an entry in the handbrake column.

If the newly coupled cars are to be moved without using their air brakes and parked nearby, the brake pressure in their air hose may be left at zero: i.e. their hoses are not connected to the train’s air hose. Before the cars are uncoupled in their new location, their handbrakes should be set. The cars will continue to report “State Emergency” while coupled to the consist because their BC value is zero; they will not have any braking. The locomotive brakes must be used for braking. If the cars are uncoupled while in motion, they will continue coasting.

If the brakes of the newly connected cars are to be controlled by the train’s air pressure as part of the consist, their hoses must be joined together and to the train’s air hose and their angle cocks set correctly. Pressing the Backslash key (\) (in English keyboards; please check the keyboard assignments for other keyboards) connects the brake hoses between all cars that have been coupled to the engine and sets the intermediate angle cocks to permit the air pressure to gradually approach the same pressure in the entire hose. This models the operations performed by the train crew. The HUD display changes to show the new condition of the brake hose connections and angle cocks:

BRAKE INFORMATION
Main reservoir 134 psi

Car	Type	BrkCyl	BrkPipe	AuxRes	ErgRes	MRPipe	RetValve	TripleValve	Handbrk	Conn	AnglCock BleedOff
0 - 0	1P	35 psi	64 psi	84 psi	84 psi			Emergency		T	A- B+
0 - 1	1P	35 psi	64 psi	84 psi	84 psi			Emergency		I	A+ B+
32884 - 0	1P	0 psi	63 psi	63 psi	63 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 1	1P	0 psi	63 psi	63 psi	63 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 2	1P	0 psi	63 psi	63 psi	63 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B-

All of the hoses are now connected; only the angle cocks on the lead locomotive and the last car are closed as indicated by the “-”. The rest of the cocks are open (“+”) and the air hoses are joined together (all “I”) to connect to the air supply on the lead locomotive.

Upon connection of the hoses of the new cars, recharging of the train brake line commences. Open Rails uses a default charging rate of about 1 minute per every 12 cars. The HUD display may report that the consist is in “Emergency” state; this is because the air pressure dropped when the empty car brake systems were connected. Ultimately the brake pressures reach their stable values:

BRAKE INFORMATION
Main reservoir 140 psi

Car	Type	BrkCyl	BrkPipe	AuxRes	ErgRes	MRPipe	RetValve	TripleValve	Handbrk	Conn	AnglCock BleedOff
0 - 0	1P	10 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release		T	A- B+
0 - 1	1P	10 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release		I	A+ B+
32884 - 0	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 1	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 2	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release	0%	I	A+ B-

If you don't want to wait for the train brake line to charge, pressing Shift+/ (in English keyboards) executes "Brakes Initialize" which will immediately fully charge the train brakes line to the final state. However, this action is not prototypical and also does not allow control of the brake retainers.

The state of the angle cocks, the hose connections and the air brake pressure of individual coupled cars can be manipulated by using the F9 Train Operations Monitor, described here. This will permit more realistic shunting of cars in freight yards.

8.6.1.2 Uncoupling Cars

When uncoupling cars from a consist, using the F5 HUD Expanded Brake Display in conjunction with the F9 Train Operations Monitor display allows the player to set the handbrakes on the cars to be uncoupled, and to uncouple them without losing the air pressure in the remaining cars. Before uncoupling, close the angle cock at the rear of the car *ahead* of the first car to be uncoupled so that the air pressure in the remaining consist is not lost when the air hoses to the uncoupled cars are disconnected. If this procedure is not followed, the train braking system will go into "Emergency" state and will require pressing the \ (backslash) key to connect the air hoses correctly and then waiting for the brake pressure to stabilize again.

8.6.1.3 Setting Brake Retainers

If a long consist is to be taken down a long or steep grade the operator may choose to set the "Brake Retainers" on some or all of the cars to create a fixed braking force by those cars when the train brakes are released. (This requires that the retainer capability of the cars be enabled; either by the menu option "Retainer valve on all cars", or by the inclusion of an appropriate keyword in the car's .wag file.) The train must be fully stopped and the main brakes must be applied so that there is adequate pressure in the brake cylinders. Pressing Shift+] controls how many cars in the consist have their retainers set, and the pressure value that is retained when the train brakes are released. The settings are described in Brake Retainers below. Pressing Shift+[cancels the settings and exhausts all of the air from the brake cylinders when the brakes are released. The F5 display shows the symbol "RV ZZ" for the state of the retainer valve in all cars, where ZZ is: "EX" for "Exhaust" or "LP" or "HP". When the system brakes are released and there are no retainers set, the air in the brake cylinders in the cars is normally released to the air. The BC pressure for the cars with retainers set will not fall below the specified value. In order to change the retainer settings, the train must be fully stopped. A sample F5 view with 50% LP is shown below:

BRAKE INFORMATION
Main reservoir 140 psi

Car	Type	BrkCyl	BrkPipe	AuxRes	ErgRes	MRPipe	RetValve	TripleValve	Handbrk	Conn	AnglCock BleedOff
0 - 0	1P	5 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release		T	A- B+
0 - 1	1P	5 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi			Release		I	A+ B+
32884 - 0	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi		EX	Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 1	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi		LP	Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 2	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi		EX	Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 3	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi		LP	Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 4	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi		EX	Release	0%	I	A+ B+
32884 - 5	1P	0 psi	90 psi	90 psi	90 psi		LP	Release	0%	I	A+ B+

8.6.2 Dynamic Brakes

Open Rails software supports dynamic braking for engines. To increase the Dynamic brakes press Period (.) and Comma (,) to decrease them. Dynamic brakes are usually off at train startup (this can be overridden by the related MSTS setting in the .eng file), the throttle works and there is no value shown in the dynamic brake line in the HUD. To turn on dynamic brakes set the throttle to zero and then press Period. Pressing Period successively increases the Dynamic braking forces. If the value n in the MSTS parameter DynamicBrakesDelayTimeBeforeEngaging (n) is greater than zero, the dynamic brake will engage only after n seconds. The throttle will not work when the Dynamic brakes are on.

The Dynamic brake force as a function of control setting and speed can be defined in a DynamicBrakeForceCurves table that works like the MaxTractiveForceCurves table (see here). If there is no DynamicBrakeForceCurves defined in the ENG file, than one is created based on the MSTS parameter values.

8.6.3 Native Open Rails Braking Parameters

Open Rails has implemented additional specific braking parameters to deliver realism in braking performance in the simulation.

Following are a list of specific OR parameters and their default values. The default values are used in place of MSTS braking parameters; however, two MSTS parameters are used for the release state: MaxAuxilaryChargingRate and EmergencyResChargingRate.

wagon(brakepipevolume - Volume of car's brake pipe in cubic feet (default .5).

This is dependent on the train length calculated from the ENG to the last car in the train. This aggregate factor is used to approximate the effects of train length on other factors.

Strictly speaking this value should depend on the car length, but the Open Rails Development team doesn't believe it is worth the extra complication or CPU time that would be needed to calculate it in real time. We will let the community customize this effect by adjusting the brake servicetimefactor instead, but the Open Rails Development team doesn't believe this is worth the effort by the user for the added realism.

engine(mainreschargingrate - Rate of main reservoir pressure change in PSI per second when the compressor is on (default .4).

engine(enginebrakereleaserate - Rate of engine brake pressure decrease in PSI per second (default 12.5).

engine(enginebrakeapplicationrate - Rate of engine brake pressure increase in PSI per second (default 12.5).

engine(brakepipechargingrate - Rate of lead engine brake pipe pressure increase in PSI per second (default 21).

engine(brakeservicetimefactor - Time in seconds for lead engine brake pipe pressure to drop to about 1/3 for service application (default 1.009).

engine(brakeemergencytimefactor - Time in seconds for lead engine brake pipe pressure to drop to about 1/3 in emergency (default .1).

engine(brakepipetimefactor - Time in seconds for a difference in pipe pressure between adjacent cars to equalize to about 1/3 (default .003).

8.6.4 Brake Retainers

The retainers of a car will only be available if either the *General Option* "Retainer valve on all cars" is checked, or the car's .wag file contains a retainer valve declaration. To declare a retainer the line "BrakeEquipmentType ( )" in the .wag file must include either the item "Retainer_4_Position" or the item "Retainer_3_Position". A 4 position retainer includes four states: exhaust, low pressure (10 psi), high pressure (20 psi), and slow direct (gradual drop to zero). A 3 position retainer does not include the low pressure position. The use and display of the retainers is described in Extended HUD for Brake Information.

The setting of the retained pressure and the number of retainers is controlled using the Ctrl+[and Ctrl+] keys (Ctrl plus the left and right square bracket ([and]) keys on an English keyboard). The Ctrl+[key will reset the retainer on all cars in the consist to exhaust (the default position). Each time the Ctrl+] key is pressed the retainer settings are changed in a defined sequence. First the fraction of the cars set at a low pressure is selected (25%, 50% and then 100% of the cars), then the fraction of the cars at a high pressure is selected instead, then the fraction at slow direct. For the 25% setting the retainer is set on every fourth car starting at the rear of the train, 50% sets every other car and 100% sets every car. These changes can only be made when the train is stopped. When the retainer is set to exhaust, the ENG file release rate value is used, otherwise the pressures and release rates are hard coded based on some AB brake documentation used by the Open Rails development team.

8.7 Dynamically Evolving Tractive Force

The Open Rails development team has been experimenting with max/continuous tractive force, where it can be dynamically altered during game play using the ORTSMaxTractiveForceCurves parameter as shown earlier. The parameters were based on the Handbook of Railway Vehicle Dynamics. This says the increased traction motor heat increase resistance which decreases current and tractive force. We used a moving average of the actual tractive force to approximate the heat in the motors. Tractive force is allowed to be at the maximum per the ENG file, if the average heat calculation is near zero. If the average is near the continuous rating than the tractive force is de-rated to the continuous rating. There is a parameter called ContinuousForceTimeFactor that roughly controls the time over which the tractive force is averaged. The default is 1,800 seconds.

8.8 Curve Resistance - Theory

8.8.1 Introduction

When a train travels around a curve, due to the track resisting the direction of travel (i.e. the train wants to continue in a straight line), it experiences increased resistance as it is "pushed" around the curve. Over the years there has been much discussion about how to accurately calculate curve friction. The calculation methodology presented (and used in OR) is meant to be representative of the impacts that curve friction will have on rolling stock performance.

8.8.2 Factors Impacting Curve Friction

A number of factors impact upon the value of resistance that the curve presents to the trains movement, as follows:

- Curve radius – the smaller the curve radius the higher the higher the resistance to the train
- Rolling Stock Rigid Wheelbase – the longer the rigid wheelbase of the vehicle, the higher the resistance to the train. Modern bogie stock tends to have shorter rigid wheelbase values and is not as bad as the older style 4 wheel wagons.
- Speed – the speed of the train around the curve will impact upon the value of resistance, typically above and below the equilibrium speed (i.e. when all the wheels of the rolling stock are perfectly aligned between the tracks). See the section below "Impact of superelevation".

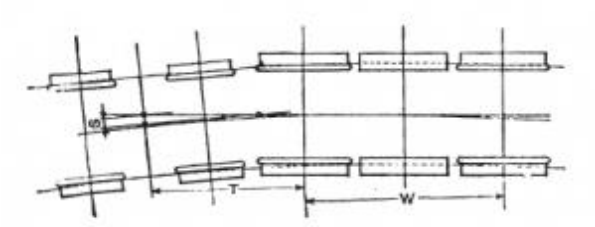
The impact of wind resistance on curve friction is ignored.

8.8.3 Impact of Rigid Wheelbase

The length of the rigid wheelbase of rolling stock will impact the value of curve resistance. Typically rolling stock with longer rigid wheelbases will experience a higher degree of "rubbing" or frictional resistance on tight curves, compared to stock with smaller wheelbases.

Steam locomotives usually created the biggest problem in regard to this as their drive wheels tended to be in a single rigid wheelbase as shown in Fig 1. In some instances on routes with tighter curve the "inside" wheels of the locomotive were sometimes made flangeless to allow them to "float" across the track head. Articulated locomotives, such as Shays, tended to have their drive wheels grouped in bogies similar to diesel locomotives and hence were favoured for routes with tight curves.

The value used for the rigid wheelbase is shown as W in Fig 1.



(Diagram Source - The Baldwin Locomotive Works - Locomotive Data - 1944)

Figure 1 - Example of Rigid Wheelbase in steam locomotive

8.8.4 Impact of Super Elevation

On any curve whose outer rail is super-elevated there is, for any car, one speed of operation at which the car trucks have no more tendency to run toward either rail than they have on straight track, where both rail-heads are at the same level (known as the equilibrium speed). At lower speeds the trucks tend constantly to run down against the inside rail of the curve, and thereby increase the flange friction; whilst at higher speeds they run toward the outer rail, with the same effect. This may be made clearer by reference to Fig. 2, which represents the forces which operate

on a car at its centre of gravity. With the car at rest on the curve there is a component of the weight **W** which tends to move the car down toward the inner rail. When the car moves along the track centrifugal force **Fc** comes into play and the car action is controlled by the force **Fr** which is the resultant of **W** and **Fc**. The force **Fr** likewise has a component which, still tends to move the car toward the inner rail. This tendency persists until, with increasing speed, the value of **Fc** becomes great enough to cause the line of operation of **Fr** to coincide with the centre line of the track perpendicular to the plane of the rails. At this equilibrium speed there is no longer any tendency of the trucks to run toward either rail. If the speed be still further increased, the component of **Fr** rises again, but now on the opposite side of the centre line of the track and is of opposite sense, causing the trucks to tend to move toward the outer instead of the inner rail, and thereby reviving the extra flange friction. It should be emphasized that the flange friction arising from the play of the forces here under discussion is distinct from and in excess of the flange friction which arises from the action of the flanges in forcing the truck to follow the track curvature. This excess being a variable element of curve resistance, we may expect to find that curve resistance reaches a minimum value when this excess reduces to zero, that is, when the car speed reaches the critical value referred to. This critical speed depends only on the super-elevation, the track gauge, and the radius of the track curvature. The resulting variation of curve resistance with speed is indicated in Fig 3.

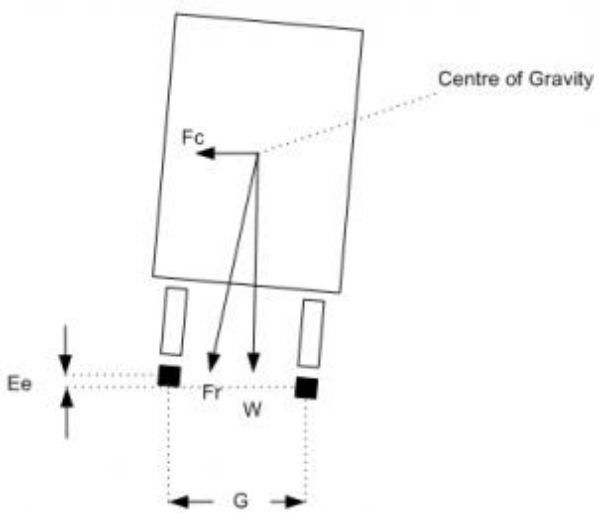


Figure 2 - Description of forces on rolling stock transitioning a curve

8.8.5 Calculation of Curve Resistance

$$R=WF(D+L)2r$$

Where R = Curve resistance, W = vehicle weight, F = Coefficient of Friction, u = 0.5 for dry, smooth steel-to-steel, wet rail 0.1 - 0.3, D = track gauge, L = Rigid wheelbase, r = curve radius.

Source: The Modern locomotive by C. Edgar Allen - 1912

8.8.6 Calculation of Curve Speed Impact

The above value represents the least value amount of resistance, which occurs at the equilibrium speed, and as described above will increase as the train speed increases and decreases from the equilibrium speed. This concept is shown pictorially in the following graph. Open Rails uses the

following formula to model the speed impact on curve resistance:

$$SpeedFactor = ABS((EquilibriumSpeed - TrainSpeed)(EquilibriumSpeed) * \text{ResistanceFactor@start}$$

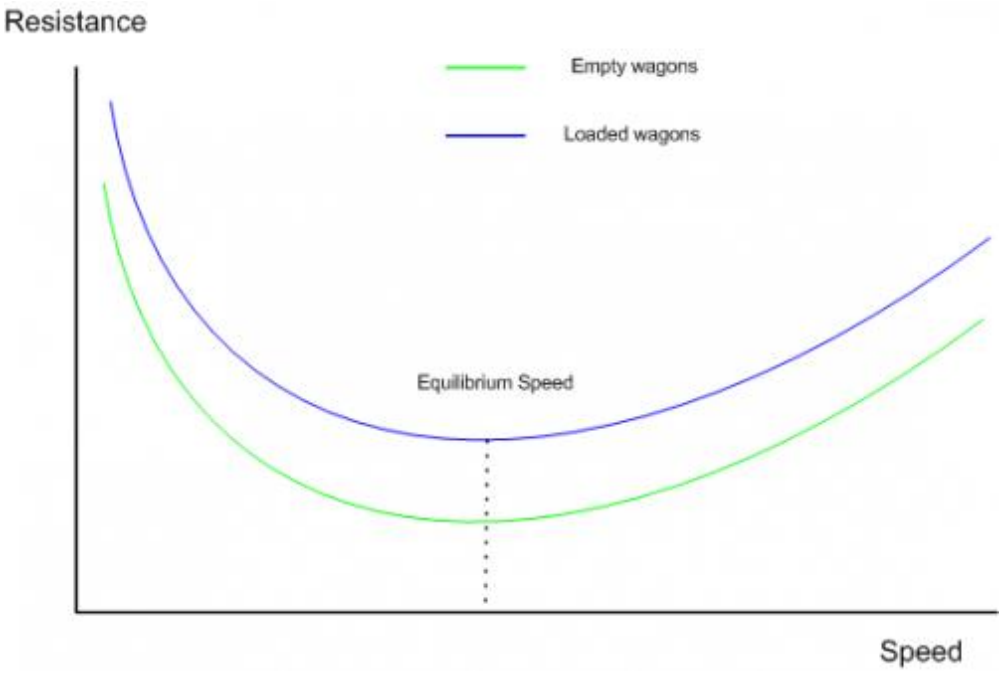


Figure 3 - Generalisation of Variation of Curve Resistance With Speed

8.8.7 Further background reading

http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Curve_resistance_(railroad)

8.9 Curve Resistance - Application in OR

Open Rails models this function, and the user may elect to specify the known wheelbase parameters, or the above "standard" default values will be used. OR calculates the equilibrium speed in the speed curve module, however it is not necessary to select both of these functions in the simulator options TAB. Only select the function desired. By studying the "Forces Information" table in the HUD, you will be able to observe the change in curve resistance as the speed, curve radius, etc. vary.

8.9.1 OR Parameter Values

Typical OR parameter values may be entered in the Wagon section of the .wag or .eng file, and are formatted as below.

```
ORTSRigidWheelBase ( 3in )
ORTSTrackGauge ( 4ft 8.5in) (also used in curve speed module)
```

8.9.2 OR Default Values

The above values can be entered into the relevant files, or alternatively if they are not present, then OR will use the default values described below.

Rigid Wheelbase – as a default OR uses the figures shown above in the "Typical Rigid Wheelbase Values" section. The starting curve resistance value has been assumed to be 200%, and has been built into the speed impact curves. OR calculates the curve resistance based upon the actual wheelbases provided by the player or the appropriate defaults. It will use this as the value at "Equilibrium Speed", and then depending upon the actual calculated equilibrium speed (from the speed limit module) it will factor the resistance up as appropriate to the current train speed.

Steam locomotive wheelbase approximation – the following approximation is used to determine the default value for the fixed wheelbase of a steam locomotive.

$$WheelBase = 1.25 * (axles - 1) * DrvWheelDiameter$$

8.9.3 Typical Rigid Wheelbase Values

The following values are used as defaults where actual values are not provided by the player.

Rolling Stock Type	Typical value
Freight Bogie type stock (2 wheel bogie)	5' 6" (1.6764m)
Passenger Bogie type stock (2 wheel bogie)	8' (2.4384m)
Passenger Bogie type stock (3 wheel bogie)	12' (3.6576m)
Typical 4 wheel rigid wagon	11' 6" (3.5052m)
Typical 6 wheel rigid wagon	12' (3.6576m)
Tender (6 wheel)	14' 3" (4.3434m)
Diesel, Electric Locomotives	Similar to passenger stock
Steam locomotives	Dependent on # of drive wheels, Can be up to 20'+, e.g. large 2-10-0 locomotives

Modern publications suggest an allowance of approximately 0.8 lb. per ton (US) per degree of curvature for standard gauge tracks. At very slow speeds, say 1 or 2 mph, the curve resistance is closer to 1.0 lb. (or 0.05% up grade) per ton per degree of curve.

8.10 Super Elevation (Curve Speed Limit) . Theory

8.10.1 Introduction

When a train rounds a curve, it tends to travel in a straight direction and the track must resist this movement, and force the train to move around the curve. The opposing movement of the train and the track result in a number of different forces being in play.

8.10.2 19th & 20th Century Vs Modern Day Railway Design

In the early days of railway construction financial considerations were a big factor in route design and selection. Given that the speed of competing transport, such as horses and water transport was not very great, speed was not seen as a major factor in the design process. However as railway transportation became a more vital need for society, the need to increase the speed of trains became more and more important. This led to many improvements in railway practices and engineering. A number of factors, such as the design of the rolling stock, as well as the track design, ultimately influence the maximum speed of a train. Today's high speed railway routes are specifically designed for the speeds expected of the rolling stock.

8.10.3 Centrifugal Force

Railway locomotives, wagons and carriages, hereafter referred to as rolling stock, when rounding a curve come under the influence of centrifugal force. Centrifugal force is commonly defined as:

- The apparent force that is felt by an object moving in a curved path that acts outwardly away from the centre of rotation.
- An outward force on a body rotating about an axis, assumed equal and opposite to the centripetal force and postulated to account for the phenomena seen by an observer in the rotating body.

For this article the use of the phrase centrifugal force shall be understood to be an apparent force as defined above.

8.10.4 Effect of Centrifugal Force

When rolling stock rounds a curve, if the rails of the track are at the same elevation (i.e. the two tracks are at the same level) the combination of centrifugal force Fc and the weight of the rolling stock W will produce a resulting force Fr that does not coincide with the centre line of track, thus producing a downward force on the outside rail of the curve that is greater than the downward force on the inside rail (Refer to Figure 1). The greater the velocity and the smaller the radius of the curve (some railways have curve radius as low as 100m), the farther the resulting force Fr will move away from the centre line of track. Equilibrium velocity was the velocity at which a train could negotiate a curve with the rolling stock weight equally distributed across all the wheels.

If the position of the resulting force Fr approaches the outside rail, then the rolling stock is at risk of “falling” off the track or overturning. The following drawing, illustrates the basic concept described. Lateral displacement of the centre of gravity permitted by the suspension system of the rolling stock is not illustrated.

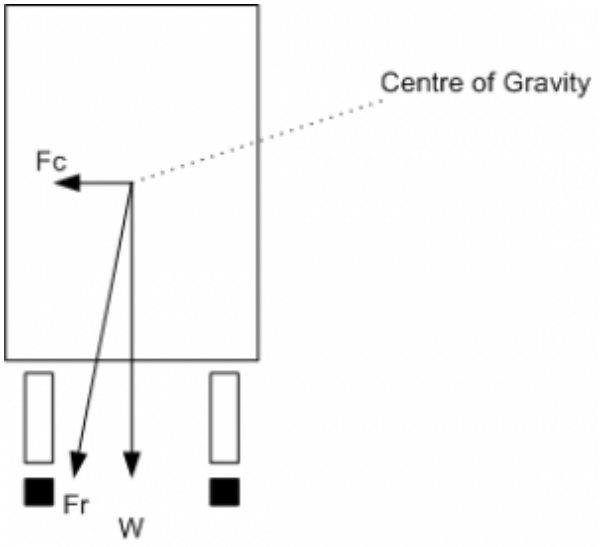


Figure 1 - Forces at work when a train rounds a curve

8.10.5 Use of Super Elevation

In order to counteract the effect of centrifugal force Fc the outside rail of the curve may be elevated above the inside rail, effectively moving the centre of gravity of the rolling stock laterally toward the inside rail.

This procedure is generally referred to as super elevation. If the combination of lateral displacement of the centre of gravity provided by the super elevation, velocity of the rolling stock and radius of curve is such that resulting force Fr becomes centred between and perpendicular to a line across the running rails the downward pressure on the outside and inside rails of the curve will be the same. The super elevation that produces this condition for a given velocity and radius of curve is known as the balanced or equilibrium elevation.

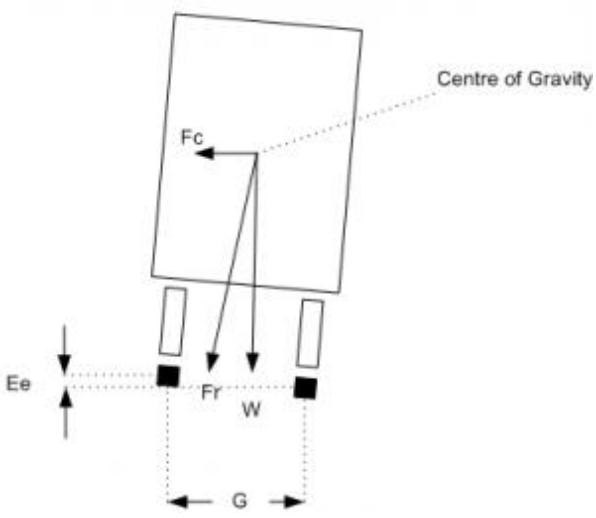


Figure 2 - This illustrates the above concept.

8.10.6 Limitation of Super Elevation in Mixed Passenger & Freight Routes

Typical early railway operation resulted in rolling stock being operated at less than equilibrium velocity (all wheels equally sharing the rolling stock weight), or coming to a complete stop on curves. Under such circumstances excess super elevation may lead to a downward force sufficient to damage the inside rail of the curve, or cause derailment of rolling stock toward the centre of the curve when draft force is applied to a train. Routine operation of loaded freight trains at low velocity on a curve superelevated to permit operation of higher velocity passenger trains will result in excess wear of the inside rail of the curve by the freight trains.

Thus on these types of routes, super elevation is generally limited to no more than 6 inches.

8.10.7 Limitation of Super Elevation in High Speed Passenger Routes

Modern high speed passenger routes do not carry slower speed trains, nor expect trains to stop on curves, so it is possible to operate these routes with higher track super elevation values. Curves on these types of route are also designed with a relatively gentle radius, and are typically in excess of 2000m (2km) or 7000m (7km) depending on the speed limit of the route.

Parameters	**France**	**Germany**	**Spain**	**Korea**	**Japan**
Speed (km/h)	300/350	300	350	300/350	350
Horizontal curve radius (m)	10000 (10km)	7000 (7km)	7000 (7km)	7000 (7km)	4000 (4km)
Super elevation (mm)	180	170	150	130	180
Max Grade (mm/m)	35	40	12.5	25	15
Cant Gradient (mm/s)	50	34.7	32	N/A	N/A
Min Vertical radius (m)	16000 (16km)	14000 (14km)	24000 (24km)	N/A	10000 (10km)

Table 1 - Curve Parameters for High Speed Operations (Railway Track Engineering by J. S. *Mundrey)*

8.10.8 Maximum Curve Velocity

The maximum velocity on a curve may exceed the equilibrium velocity, but must be limited to provide a margin of safety before overturning velocity is reached or a downward force sufficient to damage the outside rail of the curve is developed. This velocity is generally referred to as maximum safe velocity or safe speed. Although operation at maximum safe velocity will avoid overturning of rolling stock or rail damage, a passenger riding in a conventional passenger car will experience centrifugal force perceived as a tendency to slide laterally on their seat, creating an uncomfortable sensation of instability. To avoid passenger discomfort, the maximum velocity on a curve is therefore limited to what is generally referred to as maximum comfortable velocity or comfortable speed. Operating experience with conventional passenger cars has led to the generally accepted practice, circa 1980, of designating the maximum velocity for a given curve to be equal to the result for the calculation of equilibrium velocity with an extra amount added to the

actual super elevation that will be applied to the curve. This is often referred to as unbalanced super elevation or cant deficiency. Tilt trains have been introduced to allow faster train operation on tracks not originally designed for “high speed” operation, as well as high speed railway operation. The tilting of the passenger cab allows greater values of unbalanced super elevation to be used.

8.10.9 Limitation of Velocity on Curved Track at Zero Cross Level

The concept of maximum comfortable velocity may also be used to determine the maximum velocity at which rolling stock is permitted to round curved track without super elevation and maintained at zero cross level. The lead curve of a turnout located between the heel of the switch and the toe of the frog is an example of curved track that is generally not super elevated. Other similar locations would include yard tracks and industrial tracks where the increased velocity capability made possible by super elevation is not required. In such circumstances the maximum comfortable velocity for a given curve may also be the maximum velocity permitted on tangent track adjoining the curve.

8.10.10 Height of Centre of Gravity

Operation on a curve at equilibrium velocity results in the centre of gravity of the rolling stock coinciding with a point on a line that is perpendicular to a line across the running rails and the origin of which is midway between the rails. Under this condition the height of the centre of gravity is of no consequence as the resulting force Fr coincides with the perpendicular line described above. When rolling stock stops on a super elevated curve or rounds a curve under any condition of non-equilibrium the resulting force Fr will not coincide with the perpendicular line previously described and the height of the centre of gravity then becomes significant in determining the location of the resulting force Fr relative to the centre line of the track. The elasticity of the suspension system of rolling stock under conditions of non-equilibrium will introduce a roll element that affects the horizontal displacement of the centre of gravity and that must also be considered when determining the location of the resulting force Fr.

8.10.11 Calculation of Curve Velocity

The generic formula for calculating the various curve velocities is as follows:

$$V = \sqrt{EgrG}$$

Where: E = Ea (track super elevation) + Ec (unbalanced super elevation)

g = acceleration due to gravity

r = radius of curve

G = track gauge

8.10.12 Typical Super Elevation Values & Speed Impact - Mixed Passenger & Freight Routes

The values quoted below are “typical” but may vary from country to country.

Track super elevation typically will not be more than 6 inches (150mm). Naturally, depending upon the radius of the curve, speed restrictions may apply.

Normally unbalanced super elevation is typically restricted to 3 inches (75mm), and is usually only allowed for passenger stock.

Tilt trains may have values of up to 12 inches (305mm).

Typical Super Elevation Values & Speed Impact - High Speed Passenger Routes

	Cant D (SuperElevation) (mm)	***Cant deficiency (Unbalanced SuperElevation) I (mm)***
CEN (draft) – Tilting trains	180-200	300
Czech Rep. – Tilting trains	150	270
France – Tilting trains	180	260
Germany – Tilting trains	180	300
Italy – Tilting trains	160	275
Norway – Tilting trains	150	280
Spain – Tilting trains (equivalent for standard gauge)	160 (139)	210 (182)
Sweden – Tilting trains	150	245
UK – Tilting trains	180	300

Table 2 - Super Elevation limits *(source - Tracks for tilting trains - A study within the Fast And Comfortable Trains (FACT) project by B. Kufver, R. Persson)*

8.11 Super Elevation (Curve Speed Limit) Application in OR

Open Rails implements this function, and has “standard” default values applied. The user may elect to specify some of the standard parameters used in the above formula.

8.11.1 OR Super Elevation Parameters

Typical OR parameters can be entered in the *Wagon* section of the .wag or .eng file, and are formatted as below.

```
ORTSUnbalancedSuperElevation ( 3in )
ORTSTrackGauge( 4ft 8.5in)
```

8.11.2 OR Super Elevation Default Values

The above values can be entered into the relevant files, or alternatively OR will default to the following functionality.

OR will initially use the speed limit value from the route’s .trk file to determine whether the route is a conventional mixed freight and passenger route or a high speed route.

Speed limit < 200km/h (125mph) – Mixed Freight and Pass route

Speed limit > 200km/h (125mph) – High speed passenger route

“Default” values of *tracksuperelevation* will be applied based upon the above classifications.

Track gauge will default to the standard value of 4’ 8.5” (1435mm).

Unbalancedsuperelevation (Cant Deficiency) will be determined from the value entered by the user, or will default to the following values:

- Conventional Freight – 0” (0mm)
- Conventional Passenger – 3” (75mm)
- Engines & tenders – 6” (150mm)

Tilting trains require the addition of the relevant unbalancedsuperelevation information to the relevant rolling stock files.

8.12 Tunnel Friction -Theory

8.12.1 Introduction

When a train travels through a tunnel it experiences increased resistance to the forward movement.

Over the years there has been much discussion about how to accurately calculate tunnel resistance. The calculation methodology presented (and used in OR) is meant to provide an indicative representation of the impacts that tunnel resistance will have on rolling stock performance.

8.12.2 Factors Impacting Tunnel Friction

In general, the train aerodynamics are related to aerodynamic drag, pressure variations inside the train, train-induced flows, cross-wind effects, ground effects, pressure waves inside the tunnel, impulse waves at the exit of tunnel, noise and vibration, etc. The aerodynamic drag is dependent on the cross-sectional area of the train body, train length, the shape of train fore- and after-bodies, the surface roughness of train body, and geographical conditions around the traveling train. The train-induced flows can influence passengers on a subway platform and is also associated with the cross-sectional area of the train body, the train length, the shape of train fore- and after-bodies, surface roughness of train body, etc.

A high speed train entering a tunnel generates a compression wave at the entry portal that moves at the speed of sound in front of the train. The friction of the displaced air with the tunnel wall produces a pressure gradient and, as a consequence, a rise in pressure in front of the train. On reaching the exit portal of the tunnel, the compression wave is reflected back as an expansion wave but part of it exits the tunnel and radiates outside as a micro-pressure wave. This wave could cause a sonic boom that may lead to structural vibration and noise pollution in the surrounding environment. The entry of the tail of the train into the tunnel produces an expansion wave that moves through the annulus between the train and the tunnel. When the expansion pressure wave reaches the entry portal, it is reflected towards the interior of the tunnel as a compression wave. These compression and expansion waves propagate backwards and forwards along the tunnel and experience further reflections when meeting with the nose and tail of the train or reaching the entry and exit portals of the tunnel until they eventually dissipate completely.

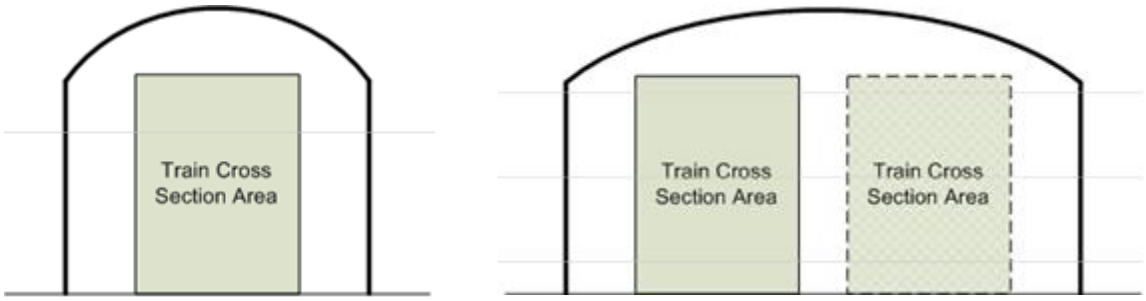
The presence of this system of pressure waves in a tunnel affects the design and operation of trains, and they are a source of energy losses, noise, vibrations and aural discomfort for passengers.

These problems are even worse when two or more trains are in a tunnel at the same time. Aural comfort is one of the major factors determining the area of new tunnels or the maximum train speed in existing tunnels.

8.12.3 Importance of Tunnel Profile

As described above, a train travelling through a tunnel will create a bow wave of air movement in front of it, which is similar to a “piston” effect. The magnitude and impact of this effect will principally be determined by the **tunnel profile, train profile and speed**.

Typical tunnel profiles are shown in the diagrams below.



As can be seen from these diagrams the smaller the tunnel cross sectional area compared to the train cross sectional area, the less air that can “escape” around the train, and hence the greater the resistance experienced by the train. Thus it can be understood that a single train in a double track tunnel will experience less resistance then a single train in a single track tunnel.

8.12.4 Calculation of Tunnel Resistance

Wt =

$$\frac{AL_{tr}}{(P+G)}V^2\left(1-\frac{1}{1+\sqrt{\frac{B+C(L_t-L_{tr})}{L_{tr}}}}\right)^2$$

where

$$A=\frac{0.000\,033\,18\gamma F_t}{(1-F_{tr}/F_t)^2},$$

$$B=174.419(1-F_{tr}/F_t)^2,$$

$$C=2.907\frac{(1-F_{tr}/F_t)^2}{4F_t/R_t}.$$

F_t – tunnel cross-sectional area (sq m)	F_{tr} – train cross-sectional area sq m)
γ - density of air (= 1.2 kg/m^3)	R_t – tunnel perimeter (m)
L_{tr} – length of train (m)	L_t – length of tunnel (m)
V – train velocity (m/s)	P - locomotive mass (tonne)
G - train mass (tonne)	Wt – additional aerodynamic drag in tunnel (N/kN)

Source: Reasonable compensation coefficient of maximum gradient in long railway tunnels by Sirong YI*, Liangtao NIE, Yanheng CHEN, Fangfang QIN

8.13 Tunnel Friction - Application in OR

for content developers:

To enable this calculation capability it is necessary to select the "Tunnel dependent resistance" option on the Open Rails Menu. The implication of tunnel resistance is designed to model the relative impact, and does not take into account multiple trains in the tunnel at the same time.

Tunnel resistance values can be seen in the Train Forces HUD.

The default tunnel profile is determined by the route speed recorded in the TRK file.

8.13.1 OR Parameters

The following parameters maybe included in the TRK file to overwrite standard default values used by Open Rails.

ORTSSingleTunnelArea (x) – Cross section area of single track tunnel – units area

ORTSSingleTunnelPerimeter (x) - Perimeter of single track tunnel – units distance

ORTSDoubleTunnelArea (x) - Cross section area of double track tunnel – units area

ORTSDoubleTunnelPerimeter (x) - Perimeter of double track tunnel – units distance

To insert these values in the .trk file, it is suggested that you add them just prior to the last parenthesis.

8.13.2 OR Defaults

Open Rails uses the following standard defaults, unless overridden by values included in the TRK file.

i) Tunnel Perimeter

Speed	1 track	2 track
<160km/h	21.3	31m
160 < 200km/h	25.0m	34.5m
200 < 250km/h	28.0m	35.0m
250 < 350km/h	32.0m	37.5m

ii) Tunnel Cross Sectional Area

Speed	1 track	2 track
<120km/h	27.0m	45.0m
<160km/h	42.0m2	76.0m2
200km/h	50.0m2	80.0m2
250km/h	58.0m2	90.0m2
350km/h	70.0m2	100.0m2

8.14 OR-Specific File Inclusions for MSTS .eng and .wag Files

In the preceding paragraphs many references have been made to OR-specific parameters and tables to be included in .eng and .wag files. MSTS is in general quite tolerant if it finds unknown parameters and even blocks within .eng and .wag files, and continues running normally. However this way of operating is not encouraged by the OR team. Instead, a cleaner approach, as described here, has been implemented.

Within the trainset folder containing the .eng and .wag files to be upgraded, create a subfolder named “OpenRails”. Within this subfolder a text file named xxxx.eng or xxxx.wag, where xxxx.eng or xxxx.wag is the name of the original file, must be created.

For the contents of this new file there are two possibilities, either:

the file contains all of the information included in the original file (except for modified parts of course) plus the OR-specific parts if any, or:

this new file contains at its beginning only an “include” reference to the original file, plus the modified parts and the OR-specific parts. This does not apply to the Name() statement and the Loco Description Information, where in any case the data in the base .eng file is retained.

An example of an OR-specific bc13ge70tonner.eng file to be placed into the OpenRails subfolder that uses the second possibility is as follows:

```
include ( ..\bc13ge70tonner.eng )
Wagon (
  MaxReleaseRate ( 2.17 )
  MaxApplicationRate ( 3.37 )
  MaxAuxilaryChargingRate ( .4 )
  EmergencyResChargingRate ( .4 )
  BrakePipeVolume ( .4 )
  ORTSUnbalancedSuperElevation ( 3in )
Engine (
  AirBrakeMainresvolume ( 16 )
  MainResChargingRate ( .5 )
  BrakePipeChargingRate ( 21 )
  EngineBrakeReleaseRate ( 12.5 )
  EngineBrakeApplicationRate ( 12.5 )
  BrakePipeTimeFactor ( .00446 )
  BrakeServiceTimeFactor ( 1.46 )
  BrakeEmergencyTimeFactor ( .15 )
  ORTSMaxTractiveForceCurves (
    0 (
       0 0 50 0 )
    .125 (
      0 23125
      .3 23125
      1 6984
      2 3492
      5 1397
      10 698
      20 349
      50 140 )
    .25 (
      0 46250
      .61 46250
      1 27940
```

```
          2 13969
          5 5588
          10 2794
          20 1397
          50 559 )
        .375 (
          0 69375
          .91 69375
          2 31430
          5 12572
          10 6287
          20 3143
          50 1257 )
        .5 (
          0 92500
          1.21 92500
          5 22350
          10 11175
          20 5588
          50 2235 )
        .625 (
          0 115625
          1.51 115625
          5 34922
          10 17461
          20 8730
          50 3492 )
        .75 (
          0 138750
          1.82 138750
          5 50288
          10 25144
          20 12572
          50 5029 )
        .875 (
          0 161875
          2.12 161875
          5 68447
          10 34223
          20 17112
          50 6845 )
        1 (
          0 185000
          2.42 185000
          5 89400
          10 44700
          20 22350
          50 8940 )
        )
      )
    )
```

The ORTSMaxTractiveForceCurves are formed by blocks of pairs of parameters representing speed in metres per second and tractive force in Newtons; these blocks are each related to the value of the throttle setting present at the top of each block. For intermediate values of the speed an interpolated value is computed to get the tractive force, and the same method applies for intermediate values of the throttle.

It is not possible to replace only a part of the Lights() block. It must be replaced in its entirety.

8.15 Train Control System

The Train Control System is a system that ensures the safety of the train.

In MSTS, 4 TCS monitors were defined: the vigilance monitor, the overspeed monitor, the emergency stop monitor and the AWS monitor. Open Rails does not support the AWS monitor.

In order to define the behavior of the monitors, you must add a group of parameters for each monitor in the Engine section of the .eng file. These groups are called VigilanceMonitor(), OverspeedMonitor(), EmergencyStopMonitor() and AWSMonitor().

In each group, you can define several parameters, which are described in the tables below.

Parameter	Description	Recommended Input Units	Typical Examples
General parameters			
MonitoringDevice MonitorTimeLimit(x)	Period of time elapsed before the alarm is triggered or the penalty is triggered	Time	MonitoringDeviceMonitorTimeLimit(5s)
MonitoringDevice AlarmTimeLimit(x)	Period for which the alarm sounds prior to the penalty being applied	Time	MonitoringDeviceAlarmTimeLimit(5s)
MonitoringDevice PenaltyTimeLimit(x)	Period in seconds before the penalty can be reset once triggered	Time	MonitoringDevicePenaltyTimeLimit(60s)
MonitoringDevice CriticalLevel(x)	Speed at which monitor triggers	Speed	MonitoringDeviceCriticalLevel(200kph)
MonitoringDevice ResetLevel(x)	Speed at which monitor resets	Speed	MonitoringDeviceResetLevel(5kph)
MonitoringDevice AppliesFullBrake(x)	Sets whether full braking will be applied	Boolean – 0 or 1	MonitoringDeviceAppliesFullBrake(0)
MonitoringDevice AppliesEmergencyBrake(x)	Sets whether emergency braking will be applied	Boolean – 0 or 1	MonitoringDeviceAppliesEmergencyBrake(1)
MonitoringDevice AppliesCutsPower(x)	Sets whether the power will be cut to the locomotive	Boolean – 0 or 1	MonitoringDeviceAppliesCutsPower(1)

Parameter	Description	Recommended Input Units	Typical Examples
MonitoringDevice AppliesShutsDownEngine(x)	Sets whether the engine will be shut down	Boolean – 0 or 1	MonitoringDeviceAppliesShutsDownEngine(0)
MonitoringDevice ResetOnZeroSpeed(x)	Set whether the monitor resets when the speed is null	Boolean – 0 or 1	MonitoringDeviceResetOnZeroSpeed(1)
MonitoringDevice ResetOnResetButton(x)	Sets whether the monitor resets when the reset button is pushed	Boolean – 0 or 1	MonitoringDeviceResetOnResetButton(0)
Specific parameters of the Overspeed Monitor			
MonitoringDeviceAlarmTime BeforeOverSpeed(x)	Period for which the alarm sounds prior to the penalty being applied	Time	MonitoringDeviceAlarmTimeBeforeOverSpeed(2s)
MonitoringDeviceTrigger OnTrackOverspeedMargin(x)	Allowed overspeed	Speed	MonitoringDeviceTriggerOnTrackOverspeedMargin(5kph)
MonitoringDeviceTrigger OnTrackOverspeed(x)	Maximum allowed speed	Speed	MonitoringDeviceTriggerOnTrackOverspeed(200kph)

9 Further Open Rails Rolling Stock Features

9.1 Train Engine Lights

OR supports the whole set of lights accepted by MSTS.

9.2 Tilting trains

OR supports tilting trains. A train tilts when its .con file name contains the “tilted” string: e.g. ETR460_tilted.con.

10 Open Rails Train Operation

Note that this document details behaviour while in single-player mode only. For multi-player mode, different rules may apply.

10.1 Open Rails Activities

OR has the aim of running in a compatible way most of the activities written for MSTS.

Also, activities specifically for OR can be created, using the additional functions OR features, like Extended AI Shunting. Discussions of the execution of some functions in ORTS and MSTS are given here.

10.1.1 Player Paths, AI Paths, and How Switches Are Handled

If the player path requires a switch to be aligned both ways, the alignment that is the last on the path is used. If an AI train crosses the player path before the player train gets there, the AI train will leave the switches aligned for the main route (the default setting for most switches)

If you throw a switch to move into a siding, the switch at the far end of the siding is aligned to let you leave when your train first occupies the siding. But after that it is not changed back to its original setting. If the switch gets thrown the other way, you can leave the siding with the switch aligned incorrectly. If you uncouple and re-couple to the train while it occupies the misaligned switch, the rear end of the train will switch tracks.

10.2 Open Rails AI

10.2.1 Basic AI Functionality

- OR supports AI trains. In time, the AI system will become more advanced with new features.
- OR supports two distinct ways of controlling trains: it supports traditional activities in compatibility with MSTS, and it also supports Timetable mode. Note that various options and settings are sometimes limited to either activity or Timetable mode.
- AI trains can meet if both paths have passing sections defined at the same place.
- Waiting points and reverse points work. Reverse points can be used in both Activity and Timetable modes, while waiting points can only be used in Activity mode.
- AI trains throw switches not lined properly before engaging them.
- In activity mode AI trains can perform shunting actions, provided the "Extended AI shunting" option has been selected.
- Priorities: AI trains should start as scheduled as long as there is no other AI train already on a conflict path.

10.3 Control Mode

Control Mode defines what interactions there are between the player and the control system, and the level of control of the player on signals and switches.

There are two basic modes: Auto Mode and Manual Mode.

Use the Ctrl+M key to toggle between these modes.

10.3.1 Auto Mode

In Auto Mode the control system sets the train's path and signals, and the player cannot change the setting of the switches or request for signals at danger to clear. The train's route is taken from the path as defined in the Activity Editor or timetable definition, and the system will attempt to clear the route ahead of the train according to the signalling rules and interaction with other trains.

No route is cleared in the reverse direction as the train is assumed not to run in reverse. Selecting a reverse cab or changing the position of the reverser does not change the direction of the route. In fact, the route will not be reversed other than at reversal points as defined in the train's path. At these reversal points, the route will reverse automatically as soon as the train stops.

If the train does accidentally run backward, e.g. due to slipping or setting back after overshooting a platform, only safety checks are performed for the rear end of the train with respect to signals, switch alignment, other trains and end of track. There is no check on speed limits behind the train.

Setting switches using the F8 window or G/Shift+G is not allowed. Setting switches using Alt+left mouseclick is possible, but is not allowed for switches in the train's path. However, any switches set manually will automatically be reset by an approaching train according to that train's path. So, in Auto Mode the train cannot deviate from the defined path.

A request to clear a signal ahead of the train using the Tab command is only allowed when the track ahead is occupied by another train which is at a stand-still, and when that track is in the train's route. A request to clear a signal which would lead the train off its route is not allowed. A request to clear a signal behind the train using Shift+Tab is also not possible.

Auto Mode is intended for normal running under control of signals or traffic control. Shunting moves can be performed if fully defined in the train's path, using reversal points etc..

10.3.1.1 Details on Auto Mode: "Auto Signal" & "Auto Node"

There are two sub-modes to Auto Mode: Auto Signal and Auto Node.

Auto Signal is the normal mode on signalled routes. The train's route is generally cleared from signal to signal. Only in specifically defined situations can routes be cleared short of a signal as detailed below.

Auto Node is set when the train has not encountered any signals yet, e.g. on unsignalled routes or at the start of the route when there is no signal along the path of the train as far as it can be cleared - e.g. in yards where the train starts but has no clear route yet to the first signal.

Auto Node can also be set if the route ahead cannot be fully cleared up to the next signal, and partial clearing is allowed.

A number of sub-states are defined in Auto Node, depending on the reason that clearance is

terminated. In the list below, (***A***) indicates a subtype which can occur if no signal has yet been encountered, (***B***) indicates a subtype when a route from a signal is partially cleared.

The following states are possible :

- *(**A**)* route ahead is clear to the maximum distance for which the track is cleared. The control mode is set to Auto Node - Max Distance.
- *(**A**)* route ahead is blocked at a switch which is aligned for and occupied or reserved by another train. Control mode is set to Auto Node - Misaligned Switch.
- *(**A**)(**B** - only if signal allows access to occupied track, or after Tab command)* route ahead is occupied by a stationary train or train moving in the same direction. Control mode is set to Auto Node - Train Ahead.
- Note that, for (***A***), it should not be possible that the route ahead is occupied by a train moving in opposite direction - in that case, there should always be a misaligned switch in the train's path.
- For (***B***), a signal will never clear when the train ahead is moving in the opposite direction, nor will the Tab request be granted.
- *(**A**)(**B**)* the train's defined path terminates short of the next signal, or there is a reversal point short of the next signal, and there is at least one switch between this point and the next signal.
  The control mode changes to Auto Node - End of Path.
  Note that if there is no switch between the terminating or reversal point and the next signal the route is automatically extended to the next signal.
- *(**A**)(**B**)* the train has passed the last signal before the end of the track, or the train has reached the end of track without encountering any signal. The control mode changes to Auto Node - End of Track.

Changes from Auto Node to Auto Signal and vice-versa are automatic and cannot be influenced by the player.

10.3.2 Manual Mode

When it is required that a train move off its defined path, a player can switch his train to Manual Mode. This will allow the player to set switches and request to clear signals off its path. However, there are a number of restrictions when running a train in Manual Mode.

In Manual Mode, a route is cleared from the train in both directions, ahead of and behind the train. The route is cleared to a shorter distance as compared to Auto Mode, and is never cleared automatically beyond the first signal. If a train is moving and passes a signal in the opposite direction, the route behind the train will automatically retract to that signal as that is now the next signal in the reverse route. The same restrictions apply with respect to signals ahead when the train is running in reverse.

The route orientation will not change whatever direction the train is running. It is fixed to the orientation of the route as it was the moment the player switched to Manual Mode. So, changing to a reverse-facing cab or changing the position of the loco's reverser does not change the direction of the route orientation. This is not a limitation to the train's behaviour, as routes are always

cleared in both directions. It does, however, affect the display of the F4 and F8 windows, as the top/bottom direction of these windows is linked to the route direction and will therefore not change if the train reverses. To assist the player in his orientation in which direction the train is moving, an 'eye' has been added to these displays symbolizing the direction of the cabview, and an 'arrow' has been added to symbolize the direction of the reverser.

The player can set all switches in the train's path using the F8 window or the G/Shift+G keys. The G key will set the first switch ahead of the train (as defined by the route direction), Shift+G sets the switch behind the train. It is also possible to set switches as required using the Alt+Left Mouseclick command. Switches can be set even if they are in the train's path and a signal has been cleared over that path. Switches, of course, can not be set if already set as part of a cleared route for another train.

The following rules apply to the setting of switches :

- all switches will remain in the position in which they were set by the last train passing over that switch. If no train has yet passed over the switch, it is in its default position.
- when in Manual Mode, trailing switches will not be automatically aligned for the approaching player train, ***except*** :
- when a route is cleared through a signal while in Manual Mode, any trailing switches in the train's path up to the end of authority (e.g. next signal) will be aligned.
  Note that in this case, trailing switches in the path cleared by the signal can no longer be reset.

Signals which the train approaches will not be cleared automatically. The player must request clearance of all signals encountered, by using the Tab or Shift+Tab keys.

The Tab key will clear the signal ahead of the train (according to the route direction), the Shift+Tab key will clear the signal behind the train. Repeated use of (Shift+)Tab will clear the next signal beyond the first cleared signal etc., but only up to the maximum clearing distance.

Signals will always clear on request except when the section immediately behind the signal is already cleared for a train from the opposite direction. The normal route-setting limitations etc. are ignored. The signal will only clear to the first available most restrictive aspect above Stop.

Note that, in contrast to the situation in Auto Mode, as the signal will clear even if the full route behind the signal is not available, a cleared signal is no indication of the cleared distance beyond that signal. It may be that the first switch beyond the signal is already cleared for another train. Therefore, when in Manual Mode, use of the F4 window or the Dispatcher window to check on the route availability is essential when running in an area with AI traffic.

When in Manual Mode, deadlock prevention processing is switched off. This is because the changes in the train's route and direction which are likely to occur in Manual Mode could jeopardise the stability of the deadlock processing. So care should be taken when using Manual Mode in an area with AI traffic, specifically on single track sections.

The only requirement to switch from Auto Mode to Manual Mode is that the train be at a standstill. The Ctrl+M key toggles between Auto Mode and Manual Mode. When switching from Auto Mode to Manual Mode, all signals already cleared will be reset, and new routes are cleared ahead of and

behind the train for the maximum distance if possible, or up to the first signal.

To switch back from Manual Mode to Auto Mode the front of the train must be on the path as defined in the Activity Editor. If the path contains reversal points, the train must be in between the same reversal points as it was when it switched to Manual Mode (i.e. same subpath).

If the train is moving in the direction as the path defines, switching back to Auto Mode can be done while the train is moving. The rear of the train need not be on the defined path, only the front.

If the train is moving in the opposite direction, it must be at a standstill in order to switch back to Auto Mode. If the orientation of the train's route was somehow reversed (e.g. by moving through a balloon-line or a Y-section) and differs from the direction in the defined path, both the front and rear must be on the defined path. In this situation, the orientation will switch back to the direction as defined in the path.

10.3.3 Out-of-Control Mode

This is a special mode. Normally, the player train should not be in this mode.

The out-of-control mode is activated when the player violates a security rule.

Such incidents are :

- when the player train passes a signal at danger (SPAD);
- when the player train passes over a misaligned switch;
- when the player train runs beyond the end of the authorised path.

These actions will place the player train into out-of-control mode.

In this situation, the emergency brake is activated and maintained until the train is stopped. The player has no control over his train until it is at a standstill.

Once the train has stopped, the player can switch to Manual Mode to try to return to a correct situation (e.g. get back to in front of the signal at danger, authorised path etc.). Once a normal situation has been restored, the player can switch back to Auto Mode. If the action led the player train onto a section of track already cleared for another train, that train is also stopped.

10.3.4 Explorer Mode

When OR is started in Explorer Mode instead of in an activity, the train is set to Explorer Mode.

The player has full control over all switches. Signals will clear as normal but signals can be cleared over routes which are not normally available using the Tab or Shift+Tab commands.

10.4 Track Access Rules

All trains clear their own path. When in Auto Signal mode, part of that function is transferred to the signals.

In Auto Node mode, trains will clear their path up to 5,000 metres, or the distance covered in 2 mins. at the maximum allowed speed, whichever is greater. In Auto Signal mode, the number of signals cleared ahead of the train is taken from the value of the SignalNumClearAhead parameter as defined in the sigcfg.dat file for the first signal ahead of the train.

In Manual mode, the distance cleared is 3,000 metres maximum, or as limited by signals.

Distances in Explorer Mode are similar to those in Auto Mode.

If a train is stopped at a signal it can claim the track ahead ensuring it will get priority as the next train onto that section, but to avoid needless blocking of other possible routes, no claim is made if the train ahead is also stopped.

No distinctions are made between types of train, and there are no priority rules.

10.5 Deadlock Processing

When a train is started, it will check its path against all other trains (including those not yet started). If a section is found on which this train and the other train are due in opposite directions, the boundaries of that total common section are determined, and ‘deadlock traps’ are set at those boundaries, for each train in the appropriate direction. These boundaries are always switch nodes. When a train passes a node which has a ‘deadlock trap’ for that train, the trap is sprung. When a train approaches a node which has an active deadlock, it will stop at that node, or at the last signal ahead of it if there is one. This train will now also spring its deadlock traps, and will claim the full common section of that deadlock to ensure it will be the next train allowed onto that section. The deadlock traps are removed when a train passes the end node of a deadlock section.

When a train is started, and the train’s path includes one or more reversal points, deadlocks are only checked for the part of the path up to the first reversal point. On reversal, deadlocks are checked for the next part, etc..

Deadlock traps are removed when a train switches to Manual mode. When the train switches back to Auto mode, the deadlock check is performed again.

There are no deadlock checks in Explorer Mode as there are no AI trains when running in this mode.

If an alternative path is defined (using the Passing Path definition in MSTS Activity Editor), and the train is setting a route to the start node of this alternative path, it will check if a deadlock is set for the related end node. If so, and the alternative path is clear, it will take the alternative path, allowing the other train to use the main path. If the alternative path is already occupied, the train will wait short of the node where the path starts (or the last signal in front, if any); this is to prevent blocking both tracks which would leave the opposite train nowhere to go.

Further rules for the use of alternative paths :

- Trains from both direction must have the same main path through the area.

- If only one train has an alternative path defined, and the trains are to pass, that train will always use the alternative path; the other train will always use the main path regardless of which train arrives first.
- If both trains have an alternative path defined, and the trains are to pass, the first train to clear its route will take the alternative path. Note that this need not always be the first train to arrive - it could be that the train which first clears its path takes much longer to actually get to the passing loop.

10.6 Reversal Points

If a reversal point is defined, the path will be extended beyond that point to the end of the section, this is to the next switch or signal or the end of track.

The 'diverging' point is determined - this is the switch node where the reverse route diverges from the incoming route. From this point, a search is made for the last signal facing the reverse direction which is located such that the full train will fit in between the signal and the end of the path. If there is such a signal, this will become the 'diverging' point. In order for a train to be able to reverse, the rear of the train must be clear of this 'diverging' point.

Reversal for AI trains occurs as in MSTS; that is, when the AI train's first car reaches the reversal point. If at that point the rear of the train has not yet cleared the diverging point, the reversal takes place later, when the diverging point is cleared.

For player trains the reversal can take place starting from 50 meters before the reversal point provided the diverging point is cleared.

As in MSTS, double reversal points can be used to set a signal at red after such reversal points. However waiting points are recommended for this, as explained in the next paragraph.

10.7 Waiting Points

10.7.1 General

Waiting points (WP) set in a path used by an AI train are regularly respected by the train, and executed when the head of the train reaches the WP.

Differently from MSTS, waiting points do not influence the length of the reserved path, except when the WP is followed by a signal in the same track section (no nodes – that is switches – in between).

WPs set in a path used by a player train have no influence on the train run, except – again when the WP is followed by a signal in the same track section. In such cases, for both AI trains and player train, the signal is set to red when the train approaches the WP.

For AI trains the signal returns to green (if the block conditions after the signal allow this) one second after expiration of the WP.

Player trains must stop BEFORE the WP (or else they get an emergency stop). In this case the signal returns to green 5 seconds after expiration of the WP.

If there are more WPs in the track section where the signal resides, only the last one influences the signal.

Waiting points cannot be used in Timetable mode.

10.7.2 Absolute Waiting Points

When the "Extended AI shunting" option is selected and OR is not in Timetable Mode, waiting points with a "waiting time" between 30000 and 32359 are interpreted as absolute time-of-day waiting points, with a format 3HHMM, where HH and MM are the hour and minute of the day in standard decimal notation.

If the AI train will reach the WP before this time of day, the WP will expire at HH:MM. If the AI train will reach the WP later, the WP will expire after one second. This type of WP can also be used in conjunction with a signal in the same track section, as explained in preceding paragraph.

Again, such waiting points won't have an effect on a player train if there is no signal in the same section; if instead there is a signal, it will stay red until the WP has expired or until the train will stop in front of the WP (the later of the two events will be considered).

Absolute waiting points are a comfortable way of synchronizing and scheduling train operation.

10.8 Signals at Station Stops

If the signal at the end of a platform protects a route which contains switches, that signal will be held at danger up to 2 minutes before the booked departure. If the station stop is less than 2 minutes, the signal will clear as the train comes to a stand. This applies to both AI train and player trains.

However, if the platform length is less than half the train length, the signal will not be held but will clear as normal to allow the train to properly position itself along the platform. Signals which only protect plain track will also not be held.

In some railway control systems trains do not get a red at the station starting signal when they have to stop in that station.

To achieve this, you can select the Experimental Option "Forced red at station stops" to disable this signal behavior.

Signals at waiting points for player trains will be held at danger until the train has stopped and the waiting point has expired. For signals at waiting points for AI trains, see the preceding paragraph.

10.9 Speedposts and Speed Limits Set by Signals

Speed limits which raise the allowed speed, as set by speedposts or signals, only become valid when the rear of the train has cleared the position of speedpost or signal.

When a speed limit set by a signal is lower than the speed limit set by the last speedpost, the speed limit is set to the lower value. However, when a speed limit as set by a signal is higher than the present speed limit set by the last speedpost, the limit defined by the speedpost will be maintained. If a lower speed limit was in force due to a limit set by another signal, the allowed limit is set to that as defined by the speedpost.

If a speedpost sets a limit which is higher than that set by the last signal, the limit set by the signal is overruled and the allowed limit is set to that as defined by the speedpost. Instead, the valid speed limit is always the lower of that of the last signal and that of the last speedpost.

10.10 Further Features of AI Train Control

- AI trains always run in Auto control mode.
- AI trains will ignore any manual setting of switches and will reset all switches as defined in their path.
- AI trains will stop at stations and will adhere to the booked station departure times if possible.
- AI trains will stop at a platform such that the middle of the train is in the middle of the platform. If the train is longer than the platform, it means that both the front and rear of the train will extend outside the platform. If the platform has a signal at the end, and this signal is held at danger (see above), and the train is too long for the platform, it will stop at the signal. But if the train length is more than double the platform length, the signal will not be held.
- AI trains will adhere to the speed limits.
- AI trains will stop at a signal approximately 30 m. short of a signal at danger.
- At waiting points, the AI trains will stop at the waiting point. Any signal beyond the waiting point is kept at danger until the required departure time.
- Where AI trains are allowed to follow other trains in the same section passing permissive signals, the train will adjust its speed to that of the train ahead, and follow at a distance of approx. 300m. If the train ahead has stopped, the train behind will draw up to a distance of about 50m. However, if the train ahead is stopped in a station, and the train behind is also booked to stop at that station, the train will draw up behind the first train up to a distance of a few metres.
- The control of AI trains before the start of an activity is similar to the normal control during an activity, except that the update frequency is reduced from the normal update rate to just once per second. But all rules regarding speed limits, station stops, deadlock, interaction between AI trains (signals etc.) are followed. The position of all AI trains at the start of an activity therefore is as close as possible to what it would have been if the activity had been started at the start time of the first AI train.

10.11 Location-linked Passing Path Processing

for content developers:

Passing paths can be used to allow trains to pass one another on single track routes. The required passing paths are defined per train path in the MSTS Activity Editor or in the native ORTS path editor included within TrackViewer.

The present version is an 'intermediate' stage leading to complete new processing. The data structure and processing have already been prepared for the next stage, when 'alternative paths' (not just a single passing path but multiple paths through a certain area) will be defined per location, and no longer per train.

The present version, however, is still based on the MSTS activity and path definition, and therefore is still based on the definition of alternative paths per train.

The setup of this version is as detailed below :

- Passing paths defined for the *player* train are available to **all** trains - in both directions. The 'through' path of the player train is taken to be the "main" path through that location. This only applies to Activity mode, as there is no predefined player train when running in Timetable mode.
- Each train can have definitions for additional passing paths, these will be available to that train only.
  Note that this implies that there can be more than one passing path per location.
- When possible passing locations are determined for each pair of trains, the train lengths are taken into consideration.
  A location is only 'valid' as a passing location if at least one of the trains fits into the *shortest* of the available passing paths.
- The order in which passing paths are selected :

If no train is approaching from the opposite direction (through route) :

Train's own path.

"Main" path.

Any alternative path.

If train is to pass another train approaching from the opposite direction (passing route) :

Train's own path (if not the same as "main" path).

Alternative path.

"Main" path.

However, in the situation where the train does not fit on all paths, for the first train to claim a path through the area, preference is given to the paths (if any) where the train will fit.

The setting of the 'deadlock' trap (the logic which prevents trains from getting on a single track from both directions) has also been changed.

In the 'old' version, the trap was 'sprung' as a train claimed its path through a possible passing area.

However, this often lead to quite early blocking of trains in the opposite direction.
In this version the trap is 'sprung' when a train actually claims its path in the single track section itself.

One slight flaw in this logic is that this can lead to the train which is to wait being allocated to the "main" path, while the train which can pass is directed over the "loop". This can happen when two trains approach a single track section at almost the same time, each one claiming its path through the passing areas at either end before the deadlock trap is actually sprung.

If a passing location contains platforms and there are passenger trains which are booked to stop there, OR will try to locate an alternate platform on the passing path, and if it can find it, this

platform will replace the original one as the stop platform. This behavior occurs only if the Location-linked Passing Path Processing option has been checked.

Selecting this type of passing path with the related experimental option processing can lead to considerable changes in the behaviour of trains on single track routes - and behaviour that is certainly significantly different from that in MSTS.

10.12 Other Comparisons Between Running Activities in ORTS or MSTS

10.12.1 End of run of AI trains:

AI trains end their run where the end point of their path resides, as in MSTS

10.12.2 "Default Performance" and "Performance" Parameters

If the AI train does not make station stops, its maxspeed (not considering signal, speedpost and route speed) is given by the first MaxVelocity parameter in the .con file, expressed in meters per second, multiplied by the "Default performance" parameter (divided by 100) that can be found and modified in the MSTS AE in the "Service editor". Such parameter divided by 100 is written by the AE in the .srv file as "Efficiency".

If the AI train makes station stops, its maxspeed depends from the "Performance" parameter for every route section, as can be seen and defined in the AI train timetable (that is maxspeed is the product of the first MAxVelocity parameter by the "Performance" parameter divided by 100).

Such performance parameter list is written (divided by 100) by the AE in "Service_Definition" block in the activity editor, again as "Efficiency" (for every station stop).

From the starting location of the AI train up to the first station, the "Performance" linked to such station is used; from the first station to the second one, the "Performance" linked to the second station is used and so on. From the last station up to end of path the "Default performance" mentioned above is used.

This corresponds to MSTS behaviour

Moreover the Efficiency parameter is used also to compute acceleration and braking curves.

10.12.3 Start of Run of AI train in a Section Reserved by Another Train

The AI train is created as in MSTS. It is up to the activity creator not to generate deadlocks. Creation of a train in a section where another train resides is possible only if the created train is "in front" of the pre-existing train.

10.12.4 Stop Time at Stations

The platform passenger number as defined by the MSTS activity editor is read by OR.

Each passenger requires 10 seconds to board. This time must be divided by the number of passenger wagons within the platform boundaries. Also locomotives with the line "PassengerCapacity" in their .eng file count as passenger wagons (EMU, DMU). The criterion to define if a passenger wagon is within the platform boundaries is different for player trains and AI trains. For player trains an individual check is made on every passenger wagon to check if it is within the plaform boundaries (it is assumed that this is OK if at least two thirds of the wagon are within). For AI trains instead the number of wagons+engines within the platform is computed, and all of them, up to the number of the passenger wagons in the consist, are considered as

passenger wagons. The player or AI train boarding time is added to the real arrival time, giving a new departure time; this new departure time is compared with the scheduled departure time and the higher value is selected as the real departure time.

AI freight trains stop for 20 seconds at stations.

A train is considered to be a passenger train if at least one wagon (or engine) carries passengers.

AI real freight trains (0 passenger cars) stop 20 seconds at stations as in MSTS if scheduled starting times are not present. If they are present the freight trains will stop up to the scheduled starting time or up to the real arrival time plus 20 seconds, whichever is higher.

A special behaviour has been introduced for trains with more than 10 cars and having a single passenger car. This type of train has been used in MSTS to have the possibility of also defining schedules for freight trains. These trains are managed - like MSTS - as passenger trains with the rules defined above. However a simplification for the player has been introduced for the player train: if the train stops with the single passenger car outside of the platform, the stop is still considered valid.

All this is compatible with MSTS operation; only the fact that the scheduled departure time is considered for AI trains differs, as it is considered an improvement.

10.13 Extended AI Train Shunting

for content developers:

10.13.1 General

When this option is selected further AI train shunting functions are available. Note that this option is not available in Timetable mode.

The following additional shunting functions are available:

1. AI train couples to a static consist and restarts with it.
2. AI train couples to a player or AI train and becomes part of it; the coupled AI train continues on its path.
3. AI train couples to a player or AI train and leaves to it its cars; the coupled and coupling train continue on their path.
4. AI train couples to a player or AI train and “steals” its cars; the coupled and coupling train continue on their path.
5. AI train uncouples any number of its cars; the uncoupled part becomes a static consist. With the same function it is possible to couple any number of cars from a static consist.
6. AI train couples to a player or AI train; the resulting combined train runs for part of the path, then stops; the train is split there into two parts that continue on their own paths (“join and split” function).

These functions are described in detail below.

Some sample activities can be found here.

10.13.2 Activity Design for Extended AI Train Shunting Functions

Activity design can be performed with the MSTS Activity Editor, and does not need post-processing of the created files.

10.13.2.1 Extended AI Functions 1 to 4 (these all involve coupling)

It is not always desired that AI trains couple to other trains because of timing problems, for instance, in case they were designed to run separately. So coupling is activated only if certain conditions are met.

In general the signal protection rules apply, that is, an AI train will find a red signal if its path leads it directly to another train. So in general these functions can be used only if there are no signals between the coupling train and the coupled train. However, at least in some cases, this can be overcome in two modes:

- by the activity developer, by inserting a double reversal point between the signal and the coupled train (this works only if the double reversal point is not in the track section occupied by the coupled train) or:
- by the player, forcing the signal to the clear state by using the dispatcher window.

Coupling with a static consist is not subject to other conditions, since if the activity designer decided that the path would lead an AI train up to against a static consist, it was also desired that the AI train would couple to it.

Coupling with another AI train or with the player train is subject to the following conditions. Either:

- the coupling happens in the last path section of the coupling AI train, and the path end point is under the coupled train or beyond it in the same section, or
- the coupling happens in the last section before a reverse point of the coupling AI train, and the reverse point is under the coupled train or beyond it in the same section.

In this way undesired couplings are avoided in case the AI train has its path running in the same direction beyond the coupled train.

Just after coupling OR performs another check to define what happens next.

In the case where the coupled train is static:

- if there is at least one reverse point further in the path or if there are more than 5 track sections further in the path, the coupling train couples with the static train, and then the resulting formed train restarts following the path of the coupling train, or
- if not, the coupling train couples with the static train and becomes part of the static train itself (is absorbed by it), stopping movement.

In case the coupled train is a player train or an AI train:

- if there is at least one reverse point further in the path of the coupling train, the coupling train couples with the coupled train; at that point there are two possibilities:

1. The trainset coupling to the coupled train is a wagon: in this case the coupling train leaves to the coupled train all the cars between its locomotive and the coupled train, decouples and

moves further in its own path (it can only reverse due to above conditions). The coupled train follows its own path.

2. The trainset coupling to the coupled train is a locomotive: in this case the coupling train “steals” from the coupled train all the cars between the coupled train's locomotive and the coupling train, decouples and moves further in its own path (it can only reverse due to the above conditions). The coupled train follows its own path.

    - or if there is no reverse point further in the path of the coupling train, the coupling train couples with the coupled train and becomes part of it (is absorbed by it). The coupled train follows its own path.

Now on how to design paths:

If one wants the coupling train to be absorbed by the coupled train: simply put the end point of the path of the coupling train below the coupled train.

If one wants the coupling train to move further on in its path after having coupled with the coupled train: put in the path of the coupling train a reverse point below the coupled train. If one also wants that the coupling train does not immediately restart, but that it performs a pause, a waiting point has to be added in the path of the coupling train, subsequent to the reverse point. It is suggested to put the waiting point near the reverse point, and in any case in the same track section. OR will execute the waiting point even if it is not exactly below what remains of the coupling train after coupling/decoupling is only the locomotive.

If the coupled train is an AI train, obviously it must be stopped on a waiting point when it has to be coupled by the coupling train.

10.13.2.2 Extended AI Function 5 (AI train uncouples any number of its cars)

To uncouple a predefined number of cars from an AI train, a special waiting point (WP) has to be inserted.

The format of this waiting point (in decimal notation) is usually 4NNSS, where NN is the number of cars in front of the AI train that are NOT uncoupled, locomotive included, and SS is the duration of the waiting point in seconds.

The 5NNSS format is also accepted. In this case the remaining AI train is formed by NN cars (locomotives included) starting from the rear of the train. Of course there must be at least one locomotive in this part of the train.

It must be noted that the "front" of the AI train is the part which is at the front of the train in the actual forward direction. So, if the consist has been created with the locomotive at first place, the locomotive will be at the front up to the first reverse point. At that point, "front" will become the last car and so on.

The following possibilities arise:

- The AI train proceeds and stops with the locomotive at the front, and wants to uncouple and proceed in the same direction: a WP with the above format is inserted where the AI train will stop, counting cars starting from the locomotive.

- The AI train proceeds with the locomotive at the rear, and wants to uncouple and proceed in the reverse direction: a reverse point has to be put in the point where the train will stop, and a WP has to be put sequentially after the reverse point, somewhere under the part of the train that will remain with the train, formatted as above. As the train has changed direction at the reverse point, again cars are counted starting from the locomotive.
- The AI locomotive proceeds and couples to a loose consist, and wants to get only a part of it: a reverse point is inserted under the loose consist, and a WP is inserted sequentially after the reverse point, somewhere under the part of the train that will remain with the train, formatted as above.

What is NOT currently possible is the ability to couple the AI train to the player train or to another AI train, and to "steal" from it a predefined number of cars. With the currently available functions it is only possible to steal all the cars or to pass all the cars. If it is desired that only a number of cars be passed from an AI or player train to the other, the first AI train has to uncouple these cars as described above, then move a bit forward, and then make the second AI train couple to these cars.

10.13.2.3 Function 6 (Join and split)

Introduction:

Join and split means that two trains (AI or player) each start running on their own path; then they join and run coupled together a part of their path, and then they split and run further each on its own path (in the same direction or in opposite directions).

This can have e.g. the following example applications:

Application 1:
- a pair of helper locomotives couples to the rear or to the front of a long train;
- the resulting train runs uphill;
- when they arrived uphill, the helper locomotives uncouple from the train.

- if the helpers were coupled to the rear of the other train, the train continues forward on its path, while the helper locomotives return downhill.

- If the helpers were coupled to the front, the helpers will enter a siding and stop; the train will continue forward on its path, and when the train has passed, the helpers can reverse and return downhill.
This means that a complete helper cycle can be simulated.

Application 2:
- a passenger train is formed from two parts that join (e.g. two sections of a HST);
- the train reaches an intermediate station and the two sections decouple;
- one section takes the main line, while the other one takes a branch line (this can happen in any direction for both trains).

While the joining train (the one that moves and couples to the other train - the joined train) must be an AI train at the moment, the joined train may be either an AI train or a player train (autopiloted or not).

Activity development:

1) The two trains start as separate trains, couple together and decouple later in the game . After that of course such trains can couple to other trains, and so on.
2) The coupling train becomes an "Incorporated" train after coupling, that is it has no more cars or locomotives (they all become part of the coupled train) and is a sort of virtual train. In this phase it is not shown in the Consist information HUD. It will return to life when an uncoupling command (automatic or manual) is issued.
3) To become an "Incorporated" train, the coupling train before coupling must pass in its path a Waiting Point with value 60001 (the effective waiting time is 0 seconds).
4) For the coupling train to couple to the rear of the coupled train there are no particular requirements; if however you want to have very short runs from coupling train start to coupling moment, it could be necessary to insert a couple of reversal points in between, or else the train could stop and avoid coupling. Please don't disdain double reversals: they are sometimes the only way to limit the authority range of a train.
5) If the coupling train has to couple to the front of the coupled train, obviously a reversal point is needed for the coupling train: to be laid somewhere under the coupled train, or even farther down in the same track section; also in this case there can be a problem of authority, that requires that the coupled train has a couple of reversal points after the point where it waits to be coupled.
6) The incorporated train has its own path, but from coupling to decoupling point it must pass over the same track sections. The incorporated train must not have waiting points nor station stops in the common path part (the coupled train instead may have them). If there are reversals within the common path part, they must be present in both paths.
7) At the point of decoupling the number of cars and locomotives to be decoupled from the train can be different from the number of the original train.
8) The whole train part to be decoupled must lie on the same track section. After decoupling, the "incorporated" train returns to being a standard AI train.
9) Manual decoupling (for player trains) occurs using the F9 window; automatic decoupling occurs with the 4NNSS and 5NNSS commands (see previous paragraph); the first one has to be used when the part to be decoupled is at the rear of the train, and the second one where the part is at the front of the train.
10) In the standard case where the main part of the train continues in the same direction, the following cases can occur:

> If the decoupled part is on the front, this decoupled part can only proceed further in the same direction (ahead of the main part of the train). To avoid it starting immediately after decoupling, it is wise to set a WP of some tens of seconds in the path of the decoupled train. This WP can be set at the beginning of the section where decoupling occurs; OR will move it under the decoupled part, so you don't need to be precise in positioning it.
>
> If the decoupled part is on the rear, two cases are possible: either the decoupled part reverses or the decoupled part continues in the same direction. In the first case a reversal point has to be put anywhere in the section where the decoupling occurs (better towards the end of the section), and OR will move it to the right place so that the train reverses at the point where decoupling occurred; moreover it is also advised to put a WP of some tens of seconds, so that the train does not restart immediately. This WP must be located logically after the reversal point, and in the same track section; OR will move it under the decoupled

train.
If the decoupled part continues in the same direction, neither WP nor RP are needed. This train part will wait that the part ahead will clear the path before starting.

Activity run hints:

When you run as player, you have to uncouple the train where foreseen by the activity (the uncoupled train must lay in a route section present in its path). If you don't uncouple on a track section present in the path of the uncoupled train, the uncoupled train will become a static train, because it's not on its path.

You can run the train formed by the original train plus the incorporated train from any cab (also in a cab of the incorporated train). However before uncoupling (splitting) the trains, you have to return to a cab of the original train.

10.14 Signal related files

for content developers:

OR manages signals as defined in the files sigcfg.dat and sigscr.dat in a way that is highly compatible to MSTS.

10.14.1 SignalNumClearAhead

Specific rules, however, apply to the sigcfg.dat parameter SignalNumClearAhead (), that is not managed in a consistent way by MSTS.

If for a SignalType only one SignalNumClearAhead () is defined (as is standard in MSTS files), such a parameter defines the number of NORMAL signal heads (not signals!) that are cleared down the route, including the signal heads of the signal where the SignalType resides.

If for a SignalType a second SignalNumClearAhead () parameter is added just before the existing one, OR interprets it as the number of NORMAL SIGNALS that are cleared down the route, including the signal where the SignalType resides.

MSTS will skip this first SignalNumClearAhead () and will consider only the second. In this way this change to sigcfg.dat does not affect its use in MSTS.

However, instead of modifying the copy of the file sigcfg.dat residing in the route's root, the approach described in the next paragraph is recommended.

10.14.2 Location of OR-specific sigcfg and sigscr files

OR-specific .sigcfg and .sigscr files must be put into a subfolder "OpenRails" created within the main folder of the route. Sigcfg.dat must maintain its name, while the sigscr files can also have other names, provided that within sigcfg.dat there is a reference to such other names.

10.15 OR-specific Signaling Functions

A set of powerful OR-specific signaling functions are available. Sigcfg and sigscr files referring to these functions must be located as described in the previous paragraph.

10.15.1 SPEED Signals – a New Signal Function Type

The SPEED signal function type allows a signal object marker to be used as a speed sign.

The advantages of such a use are :

- The signal object marker only applies to the track on which it is placed. Original speed signs always also affect any nearby lines, making it difficult and sometimes impossible to set a specific speed limit on just one track in complex areas.
- As a signal object, the SPEED signal can have multiple states defined and a script function to select the required state, e.g. based on route selection. This allows different speed limits to be defined for different routes through the area, e.g. no limit for the main line but specific limits for a number of diverging routes.

The SPEED signal is fully processed as a speed limit and not as a signal, and it has no effect on any other signals.

Limitation : it is not possible to define different speeds related to type of train (passenger or freight).

10.15.2 Definition and Usage

The definition is similar to that of any other signal, with SignalFnType set to "SPEED".

It allows the definition of drawstates and aspects like any other signal. Different speed values can be defined per aspect as normal.

An aspect can be set to not have an active speed limit. If this aspect is active, the speed limit will not be changed. This can, for instance, be used if a route-linked speed limit is required. This aspect can then be set for a route for which no speed limit is required.

An aspect can also be set to not have an active speed limit but with a special signal flag : OR_SPEEDRESET.

If this flag is set, the speed limit will be reset to the limit as set by the last speed limit sign. This can be used to reset any limit imposed by a specific signal aspect. Note that this does not overrule any speed limits set by another SPEED signal as those limits are processed as if set by a speed limit sign.

Example :

```
SignalType ("SpeedSignal"
        SignalFnType ( SPEED )
        SignalLightTex ( "ltex" )
        SignalDrawStates ( 5
                SignalDrawState ( 0
                        "speed25"
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 1
                        "speed40"
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 2
                        "speed50"
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 3
                        "speed60"
                        )
                )
```

```
                SignalDrawState ( 4
                        "speed70"
                        )
                )
        )
        SignalAspects ( 5
                SignalAspect ( APPROACH_1       "speed25"       SpeedMPH ( 25 ) )
                SignalAspect ( APPROACH_2       "speed40"       SpeedMPH ( 40 ) )
                SignalAspect ( APPROACH_3       "speed50"       SpeedMPH ( 50 ) )
                SignalAspect ( CLEAR_1          "speed60"       SpeedMPH ( 60 ) )
                SignalAspect ( CLEAR_2          "speed70"       SpeedMPH ( 70 ) )
        )
        SignalNumClearAhead ( 2 )
)
```

Notes :

- The SignalNumClearAhead value must be included to satisfy syntax but has no function.
- The actual speed can be set either using fixed aspect selection through user functions, or can be route linked.

The actual use is defined in the related script and the related shape definition.

Example 2 :

```
SignalType ( "SpeedReset"
        SignalFnType ( SPEED )
        SignalLightTex ( "ltex" )

        SignalDrawStates ( 1
                SignalDrawState ( 0
                   "Red"
                )
        )
        SignalAspects ( 1
                SignalAspect ( STOP       "Red"  signalflags (OR_SPEEDRESET) )
        )
        SignalNumClearAhead ( 2 )
)
```

This example resets the speed to the limit as set by the last speed sign, overruling any speed limits set by signal aspects.

10.15.3 Approach control functions

Approach control signals are used, specifically in the UK, to keep a signal at 'danger' until the train is within a specific distance ahead of the signal, or has reduced its speed to a specific value. Such control is used for diverging routes, to ensure the speed of the train is reduced sufficiently to safely negotiate the switches onto the diverging route.

Two script functions for use in OR have been defined which can be used to control the signal until the train has reached a specific position or has reduced its speed.

These functions are :

- APPROACH_CONTROL_POSITION(position)
- APPROACH_CONTROL_SPEED(position, speed)

These functions are Boolean functions: the returned value is 'true' if a train is approaching the signal and is within the required distance of the signal and, for APPROACH_CONTROL_SPEED, has reduced its speed below the required values.

Parameters :

position : required distance of train approaching the signal, in meters

speed : required speed, in meters/sec.

Note that the speed is checked only when the train is within the defined distance.

Important note : although the script uses 'float' to define local variables, these are in fact all integers. This is also true for the values used in these functions : if direct values are used, these must be integer values.

The values may be set directly in the signal script, either as variables or as numbers in the function call.

However, it is also possible to define the required limits in the sigcfg.dat file as part of the signal definition.

The syntax definition for this is :

ApproachControlLimits (<definitions>)

Allowed definitions :

- Position :
  - Positionm : position in meters.
  - Positionkm : position in kilometers.
  - Positionmiles : position in miles.
  - Positionyd : position in yards.
- Speed :
  - Speedkph : speed in km / hour.
  - Speedmph : speed in miles / hour.

These values are referenced in the script file using the following variable names :

- Approach_Control_Req_Position
- Approach_Control_Req_Speed

These variables must not be defined as floats etc., but can be used directly without prior definition.

Note that the values as defined in the sigcfg.dat file will be converted to meters and meters/sec and rounded to the nearest integer value.

Example

This example is for a three-head search light signal, which uses Approach Control if the route is set to the 'lower' head.

Route selection is through 'dummy' DISTANCE type route-selection signals.

Signal definition :

```
SignalType ( "SL_J_40_LAC"
        SignalFnType ( NORMAL )
        SignalLightTex ( "bltex" )
        SigFlashDuration ( 0.5 0.5 )
        SignalLights ( 8
                SignalLight ( 0 "Red Light"
                        Position ( 0 6.3 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
                SignalLight ( 1 "Amber Light"
                        Position ( 0 6.3 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
                SignalLight ( 2 "Green Light"
                        Position ( 0 6.3 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
                SignalLight ( 3 "Red Light"
                        Position ( 0 4.5 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
                SignalLight ( 4 "Amber Light"
                        Position ( 0 4.5 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
                SignalLight ( 5 "Green Light"
                        Position ( 0 4.5 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
                SignalLight ( 6 "Amber Light"
                        Position ( 0 2.7 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
                SignalLight ( 7 "White Light"
                        Position ( 0 2.7 0.11 )
                        Radius ( 0.125 )
                )
        )
        SignalDrawStates ( 8
                SignalDrawState ( 0
                        "Red"
                        DrawLights ( 1
                                DrawLight ( 0 )
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 1
                        "TopYellow"
                        DrawLights ( 1
                                DrawLight ( 1 )
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 2
                        "TopGreen"
                        DrawLights ( 1
```

```
                                DrawLight ( 2 )
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 3
                        "TopYellowMidGreen"
                        DrawLights ( 2
                                DrawLight ( 1 )
                                DrawLight ( 5 )
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 4
                        "MidYellow"
                        DrawLights ( 2
                                DrawLight ( 0 )
                                DrawLight ( 4 )
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 5
                        "MidGreen"
                        DrawLights ( 2
                                DrawLight ( 0 )
                                DrawLight ( 5 )
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 6
                        "LowYellow"
                        DrawLights ( 3
                                DrawLight ( 0 )
                                DrawLight ( 3 )
                                DrawLight ( 6 )
                        )
                )
                SignalDrawState ( 7
                        "LowWhite"
                        DrawLights ( 3
                                DrawLight ( 0 )
                                DrawLight ( 3 )
                                DrawLight ( 7 SignalFlags ( FLASHING ))
                        )
                )
        )
        SignalAspects ( 8
                SignalAspect ( STOP                             "Red" )
                SignalAspect ( STOP_AND_PROCEED                         "LowWhite" SpeedMPH(25) )
                SignalAspect ( RESTRICTING                      "LowYellow" SpeedMPH(25) )
                SignalAspect ( APPROACH_1                       "MidYellow" SpeedMPH(40) )
                SignalAspect ( APPROACH_2                       "TopYellowMidGreen" )
                SignalAspect ( APPROACH_3                       "TopYellow" )
                SignalAspect ( CLEAR_1                          "MidGreen" SpeedMPH(40) )
                SignalAspect ( CLEAR_2                          "TopGreen" )
        )

    ApproachControlSettings (
        PositionM  ( 500 )
        SpeedMpH   ( 10  )
    )
        SignalNumClearAhead ( 5 )
)
```

Signal function (reduced to show use of approach control only).

This function uses approach control for the 'lower' route.

```
////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////

SCRIPT SL_J_40_LAC

// Searchlight Top Main Junction
        extern float        block_state ();
        extern float        route_set ();
        extern float        def_draw_state ();
        extern float    next_sig_lr ();
        extern float    sig_feature ();
        extern float        state;
        extern float        draw_state;
        extern float        enabled;

//
// Returned states
// drawn :
//      SIGASP_STOP
//
//   Top Cleared :
//      SIGASP_APPROACH_3
//      SIGASP_APPROACH_2
//      SIGASP_CLEAR_2
//
//   Middle Cleared :
//      SIGASP_APPROACH_1
//      SIGASP_CLEAR_1
//
//   Lower Cleared :
//      SIGASP_RESTRICTING
//      SIGASP_STOP_AND_PROCEED
//
// User Flags
//
// USER1 : copy top approach
// USER2 : top approach junction
// USER3 : copy middle approach
// USER4 : no check block for lower
//

    float       clearstate;
    float       setstate;
    float       diststate;
    float       adiststate;
    float       nextstate;
    float       routestate;
    float       blockstate;

    blockstate = 0;
    clearstate = 0;
    routestate = 0;
    setstate   = 0;
    nextstate  = next_sig_lr(SIGFN_NORMAL);
    diststate  = next_sig_lr(SIGFN_DISTANCE);
    adiststate = diststate;

    if (diststate ==# SIGASP_CLEAR_1)
    {
       diststate = SIGASP_CLEAR_2;
```

```
    }
    if (diststate ==# SIGASP_APPROACH_1)
    {
       diststate = SIGASP_APPROACH_3;
    }

// get block state
   if (!enabled)
    {
       clearstate = -1;
    }

    if (block_state () ==# BLOCK_JN_OBSTRUCTED)
    {
       clearstate = -1;
    }

    if (block_state() ==# BLOCK_OCCUPIED)
    {
       blockstate = -1;
    }

// check if distant indicates correct route
    if (diststate ==# SIGASP_STOP)
    {
       clearstate = -1;
    }

// top route
    state = SIGASP_STOP;

    if (blockstate == 0 && clearstate == 0 && diststate ==# SIGASP_CLEAR_2)
    {
       // aspect selection for top route (not shown)
       .......
    }

// middle route
    if (blockstate == 0 && clearstate == 0 && diststate ==# SIGASP_APPROACH_3)
    {
       // aspect selection for middle route (not shown)
       .......
    }

// lower route
    if (blockstate == 0 && clearstate == 0 && diststate ==# SIGASP_RESTRICTING)
    {
       if (Approach_Control_Speed(Approach_Control_Req_Position, Approach_Control_Req_Speed))
       {
          state = SIGASP_RESTRICTING;
       }
    }

// Get draw state
        draw_state = def_draw_state (state);
```

10.15.4 TrainHasCallOn Function

This function is intended specifically to allow trains to 'call on' in Timetable mode when allowed to do so as defined in the timetable. The use of this function allows a train to 'call on' into a platform in Timetable mode without jeopardizing the functionality in normal Activity mode.

It is a Boolean function and returns state as follows :

- Activity Mode :
- Returns true if :
  - Route from signal is not leading into a platform.
- Timetable Mode :
- Returns true if :
  - Route from signal is not leading into a platform.
  - Route from signal is leading into a platform and the train has a booked stop in that platform, and either of the following states is true :
    - Train has $CallOn command set for this station.
    - Train has $Attach command set for this station and the train in the platform is the train which it has to attach to.
    - Train is part of RunRound command, and is to attach to the train presently in the platform.

The use of this function must be combined with a check for blockstate ==# BLOCK_OCCUPIED.

Note : *this function must NOT be used in combination with blockstate ==# JN_OBSTRUCTED.*

The state JN_OBSTRUCTED is used to indicate that the route is not accessible to the train (e.g. switch set against the train, opposite movement taking place etc.).

Some signal scripts allow signals to clear on blockstate ==# JN_OBSTRUCTED. This can lead to all kinds of incorrect situations.

These problems are not due to programming errors but to route signal script errors.

Example (part of script only) :

```
if (enabled && route_set() )
{
    if (block_state == #BLOCK_CLEAR)
    {
    // normal clear, e.g.
          state = #SIGASP_CLEAR_1;
    }
    else if (block_state == #BLOCK_OCCUPIED && TrainHasCallOn() )
    {
    // clear on occupied track and CallOn allowed
          state = #SIGASP_STOP_AND_PROCEED;
    }
    else
    {
    // track is not clear or CallOn not allowed
          state = #SIGASP_STOP;
    }
}
```

10.15.5 TrainHasCallOn_Restricted Function

This function has been introduced because signals with call-on aspects can be used not only as entrance signals for stations, but also on 'free line' sections, that is, away from stations.
TrainHasCallOn always allows call-on if the signal is on a 'free-line' section. This is to allow proper working for USA-type permissive signals.

Some signal systems however use these signals on sections where call-on is not allowed. For this case, the TrainHasCallOn_Restricted function has been introduced.

When approaching a station, both functions behave the same, but on 'free line' sections, the TrainHasCallOn_Restricted() will never allow call-on.

So, in a nutshell :

Use on approach to stations :

- TrainHasCallOn() and TrainHasCallOn_Restricted() :
  - Activity : call-on not allowed
  - Timetable : call-on allowed in specific situations (with $callon, $stable or $attach commands)

Use on 'free line' :

- TrainHasCallOn() :
  - Activity or Timetable : call-on always allowed
- TrainsHasCallOn_Restricted() :
  - Activity or Timetable : call-on never allowed

10.15.6 How to Lay Down These Signals on the Route

These signals can be laid down with the MSTS RE. In the .tdb file only a reference to the SignalType name is written, an in the world file only a reference to the signal head is written. As these are accordingly to MSTS standards, no need to manually edit route files exists.

10.15.7 Signalling Function NEXT_NSIG_LR

This function is similar to NEXT_SIG_LR, except that it returns the state of the nth signal ahead.

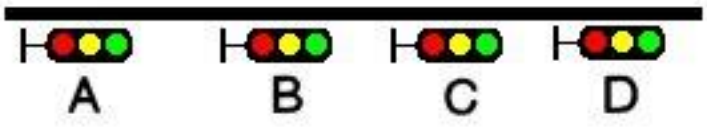
Function call : state = NEXT_NSIG_LR(MstsSignalFunction fn_type, int n).

Returned value : state of *n*th signal ahead, except :

- When there are less than *n* signals ahead of the train.
- when any of the intermediate signals is at danger.

In those situations, the function will return SIGASP_STOP.

Usage : take, for instance, the sequence of signals as shown below.



The distance between signals B and C, as well as between C and D, is shorter than the required braking distance. Therefore, if D is at danger, both C and B must show yellow; similar, if C is at danger, both B and A must be yellow.
Problem now is what aspect should be shown at A : if B is yellow, is it because C is at red, so A must also be yellow, or is it because C is at yellow as D is at red - in which case A can show green. One could, of course, use two different states for yellow at C, but that soon gets rather complicated, and also one might soon run out of available aspects.

With the new function, it becomes simpler : if B is at yellow, A can directly check the state of C, and so decide if it can clear to green or must show yellow.

Suppose state SIGASP_STOP shows red, SIGASP_APPROACH_1 shows yellow and SIGASP_CLEAR_1 shows green for all signals, the related part of the script could be as follows:

```
if (next_sig_lr(SIGFN_NORMAL) == SIGASP_APPROACH_1)
{
   if (next_nsig_lr(SIGFN_NORMAL, 2) == SIGASP_STOP)
   {
      state = SIGASP_APPROACH_1;
   }
   else
   {
      state = SIGASP_CLEAR_1;
   }
}
```

The function is also very useful when a distant signal is to reflect the state of more than one home signal, but *dist_multi_sig_mr* cannot be used because there is no distant signal further on.

10.15.8 Signalling Function HASHEAD

This function can be used for any optional SIGNAL_HEAD as defined for the relevant signalshape in sigcfg.dat, to check if that has been selected for this signal or not.

Using 'DECOR' dummy heads, this allows these heads to be used as additional user settings, and as such are kind of an extension to the four available SIGFEAT_USER flags.

Please note that this function is still experimental.

Function call : state = HASHEAD(headname);

Function returns 1 if head is set, else 0.

10.16 OR-Specific Additions to Activity Files

The additions described below will be ignored by MSTS. Make these additions to the .act file with a Unicode-enabled editor. Note that these additions will be removed by the MSTS Activity Editor if the .act activity file is opened and saved as an .act file by the AE. However, if the activity is opened in the AE and saved in an .apk Activity Package, the additions will be included.

Since activity files are not used in Timetable mode, none of the following features will operate in that mode.

10.16.1 No Halt by Activity Message Box

MSTS activities may contain instructions to display a message box when the player train reaches a specific location in the activity, or at a specific time. Normally the simulation is halted when the message box is displayed until the player manually closes the box. This behavior can be modified if the line:

```
ORTSContinue ( nn )
```

where nn = number of seconds to display the box,
is added to the event declaration (EventTypeLocation or EventTypeTime) in the .act file.

For example:

```
EventCategoryLocation (
      EventTypeLocation ( )
      ID ( 1 )
      Activation_Level ( 1 )
      Outcomes (
            DisplayMessage ( "Test nopause." )
      )
      Name ( Location1 )
      Location ( -146 14082 -1016.56 762.16 10 )
      TriggerOnStop ( 0 )
      ORTSContinue ( 10 )
)
```

Now, the activity will continue to run while the message window is displayed. If the player does nothing, the window disappears automatically after nn seconds. The player may close the window manually or pause the activity by clicking on the appropriate button in the window. Note that this modification does not work for the terminating event of the activity.

10.16.2 AI Train Horn Blow

This feature requires selection of the Extended AI train shunting option.

Horn blow by AI trains is achieved by inserting into the AI train path a waiting point with a waiting time value between 60011 (1 second horn blow) and 60020 (10 seconds horn blow).

The AI train will not stop at these waiting points, but will continue at its regular speed.

If a "normal" waiting point follows a horn blow waiting point, the horn blow must be terminated before the normal waiting point is reached (just in case).

On the other hand, a horn blow waiting point may be positioned just after a normal WP (thus achieving the effect that the train blows the horn when it restarts).

10.16.3 AI Horn Blow at Level Crossings

If the line:

```
ORTSAIHornAtCrossings ( 1 )
```

is inserted into the activity file following the line:

```
NextActivityObjectUID ( 32768 )
```

(note that the number in the brackets may be different), then AI trains will blow their horn at level crossings for a random time between 2 and 5 seconds.The level crossing must be defined as such in the route editor. “Simple” road crossings, not defined as level crossings, may also be present in the route. The AI train will not blow the horn at these crossings. Examining the route with TrackViewer allows identification of the true level crossings. If a horn blow is also desired for a”simple” road crossing, the feature “AI Train Horn Blow”, described above, must be used.

10.16.4 Activity Location Sound File

An activity file can be modified so that a sound file is played when the train reaches a location specified in an EventTypeLocation event in the .act file. Add the line:

```
ORTSActSoundFile ( Filename SoundType )
```

to the EventCategoryLocation event, where:

Filename = name, in quotations, of a .wav file located in the SOUND folder of the route.
Soundtype = any one of the strings:

“Everywhere” – sound is played in all views at the same volume without fading effects

“Cab” – sound is played only in the cab

“Pass” – sound is played only in the active passenger view

“Ground” - sound is played externally from a fixed position, the one that the locomotive has reached when the event is triggered. The sound is also heard in internal views in an attenuated way, and becomes attenuated by moving away from the position.

For example:

```
EventCategoryLocation (
      EventTypeLocation ( )
      ID ( 7 )
      Activation_Level ( 1 )
      Outcomes (
            DisplayMessage ( "This message won't be shown because
            ORTSContinue = 0”)
      )
      Name ( Location6 )
      Location ( -146 14082 -1016.56 762.16 10 )
      TriggerOnStop ( 0 )
      ORTSContinue ( 0 )
      ORTSActSoundFile ( "x_Next_stop_MiClei.wav" "Pass" )
)
```

Including the ORTSContinue line (explained above) inhibits the normal halting of the activity by the location event and suppresses the display of the event message. Also, if the value of 0 is inserted in the line as in the example above, the display of the event message is completely suppressed. Only one sound file per event is allowed.

11 Timetable Mode

11.1 Introduction

The timetable concept is not a replacement for the activity definition, but is an alternative way of defining both player and computer-controlled (AI and Static) trains.

In an activity, the player train is defined explicitly, and all AI trains are defined in a traffic definition. Static trains are defined separately.

In a timetable all trains are defined in a similar way. On starting a timetable run, the required player train is selected from the list of available trains. In the timetable definition itself, no distinction is made between running trains – any of the running trains can be selected as player train, and if not selected as such they will be run as AI trains. Static trains are also defined in the same way but cannot be selected as the player train.

As a result, the number of different 'activities' that can be played using the same timetable file is equal to the number of trains which are defined in the timetable.

The development of the timetable concept is still very much a work in progress. This document details the state as it is at the moment, but also includes items yet to be produced, or items which have yet to be developed further.

To distinguish between these items, the following styles are used in the description of timetable mode.

Items shown in black italics are available but only in a provisional implementation, or in a limited context. Further development of these items is still required.

Important aspects where the use of specific OR or MSTS items for timetables differs significantly from its use in an activity are shown in bold.

Apart from the items indicated as above, it should be realised that as work continues, all items are still subject to change.

11.2 General

11.2.1 Data definition

The timetable data is defined in a Spreadsheet, and saved as a *.csv file (character separated file) in Unicode format. As the separation character, either ',' (comma) or ';' (semi-colon) must be used.

Do not select space or tab as the separation character.

As ';' or ',' are possible separation character, these symbols must not be used anywhere within the actual data. Enclosure of text by quotes (either single or double) has no effect. Also, the character '#' should not be used in train names, since it is the prefix for reserved words in the Timetable.

11.2.2 File structure

The saved *.csv files must be renamed with extension *.timetable_or. The timetable files must be placed in a subdirectory named “OpenRails” created in the route's Activities directory.

11.2.3 File and train selection

When starting a timetable run, the mode “Timetable” is selected in the menu. Then the desired timetable file must be selected in the “Timetable set” display.

After selecting the required timetable, a list of all trains contained in that timetable is displayed and the required train can be selected.

Season and weather can also be selected, these are not preset within the timetable definition.

11.3 Timetable Definition

11.3.1 General

A timetable consists of a list of trains, and, per train, the required timing of these trains. The timing can be limited to just the start time, or it can include intermediate times as well.

At present, intermediate timings are limited to 'platform' locations as created using the MSTS Route Editor.

Each column in the spreadsheet contains data for a train and each row represents a location. A cell at the intersection of a train and location contains the timing data for that particular train at that location.

Special rows and columns can be defined for general information or control commands.

The first row for each column contains the train definition.

The first column for each row contains the location definition.

The cell at the intersection of the first row and first column **must be empty**.

This paragraph only lists the main outline, full detailed description will follow in the next paragraphs.

11.3.2 Column definitions

A column is defined by the contents of the first row.

Default, the first row defines the train name.

Special columns can be defined using the following syntax :

#comment : column contains comment only and is ignored when reading the timetable.

<blank> : column is extension of preceding column.

11.3.3 Row definitions

A row is defined by the contents of the first column.

Default, the first column defines the stop location.

Special columns can be defined using the following syntax :

#comment	: row contains comment only and is ignored when reading the timetable
<blank>	: row is extension of row above
#path	: defines train path
#consist	: defines train consist

#start : defines time when train is started
#note : defines general notes for this train
#dispose : defines how train is handled after it has terminated

11.3.4 Timing details

Each cell which is at an intersection of a train column and a location row, can contain timing details for that train at that location.

Presently, only train stop details can be defined. Later on, passing times can also be defined, these passing times can be used to determine a train's delay.

Control commands can be set at locations where the train stops, but can also be set for locations where no timing is inserted as the train passes through that location without stopping.

11.4 Timetable Data Details

11.4.1 Timetable Description

Although #comment rows and columns are generally ignored, the contents of the cell at the intersection of the first #comment row and first #comment column is used as the timetable description and appears as the timetable's name in the Open Rails menu.

11.4.2 Train Details

The train name as defined in the first row must be unique for each train in a timetable file.

This name is also used when referencing this train in a train command, see details below.

The sequence of trains is not important.

11.4.3 Location Details

At present, the possible locations are restricted to 'platforms' as defined in the MSTS Route Editor.

Each location must be set to the 'Station Name' as defined in the platform definitions.

The name used in the timetable must exactly match the name as used in the route definition (*.tdb file), otherwise the location cannot be found and therefore cannot be processed.

Also, each location name must be unique, as otherwise its position in the train path could be ambiguous.

The sequence of the locations is not important, as the order in which the stations are passed by a train is defined in that train's path. For the same reason, a train's path can be set to just run in between some of the locations, or be set to bypass certain stations.

11.4.4 Timing Details

Each cell at an intersection of train and location can contain the timing details of that train at that location.

Times are defined as HH:mm, and the 24-hour clock must be used.

If a single time is inserted it is taken as the departure time (except at the final location).

If both arrival and departure time are to be defined, these must be separated by '-'.

Additional control commands can be included. Such commands can also be set for locations where the train does not stop and therefore has no timing details, but the train must pass through

that location for the commands to be effective.

Although a location itself can be defined more than once in a timetable, it is not possible to define timing details for trains for a location more than once. If a train follows a route which takes it through the same location more than once, the train must be 'split' into separate train entries.

11.4.5 Special Columns

- **#Comment column**
  A column with the #comment definition in the first row is a comment column and is ignored when reading the timetable, except for the cell at the intersection of the first comment column and the first comment row.

- **<Blank> column**
  A column with a blank (empty) cell in the first row is taken as a continuation of the preceding column. It can be used to insert control commands which apply to the details in the preceding column. This can be useful when timings are derived automatically through formulas in the spreadsheet as inserting commands in the timing cell itself would exclude the use of such formulas.

11.4.6 Special rows

- **#Comment row**
  A row with the #comment definition in the first column is a comment row and is ignored when reading the timetable, except for the cell at the intersection of the first comment column and the first comment row.

- **<Blank> row**
  A row with a blank (empty) cell in the first column is taken as a continuation of the preceding row.

- **#Path row**
  The #path row defines the path of that train. The path must be a *.pat file as defined by the MSTS Activity Editor, and must be located in the route's Path directory. This field is compulsory.

  The timetable uses the same paths as those defined for activities.

  However, waiting points must not be defined in paths for use in timetables as the processing of waiting points is not supported in the timetable concept.
  Waiting points within a timetable must be defined using the specific control commands.

  The #path statement can take a qualifier : **/binary**.
  Large timetables can require many paths, and loading those paths can take considerable time (several minutes).
  To reduce this loading time, the paths can be stored in a processed, binary format. This format is the same as used in the 'save' command.
  Note that the binary path information cannot be directly accessed by the user, either for reading or for writing.
  When **/binary** is set, the program will check if a binary path exists. If so, it will read that path.

If not, it will read the 'normal' path, and will then store this as binary for future use.

Binary paths are stored in a subdirectory named “OpenRails” which must be created in the Paths directory of the route.

Important:
If a path is edited, the binary version must be deleted manually, otherwise the program will still use this older version.
If a route is edited, such that the .tdb might have been changed, *all* binary paths must be deleted.

- **#Consist row**
  The #consist row defines the consist used for that train. This field is compulsory.

  However, if the train is run as an AI train and it is 'formed' out of another train (see below), the consist information is ignored and the train uses the consist of the train out of which it was formed.

  For the player train, the consist is always used even if the train is formed out of another train. The consist definition must be a *.con file as defined by the MSTS Activity Editor, and must be stored in the defined consist directory.

  Also a more complex syntax of the consist definition is possible, as described below.

  This allows a consist definition to be not just a single string directly referring to a file, but a combination of strings, with the possibility to use (part of) the consist in reverse.

  The general syntax is :

  consist [$reverse] [+ consists [$reverse] [+ ...]]

  Example : a loco-hauled train, using the same set of coaches, running in both directions. Two consists are defined : **c_loco** and **c_wagons**.

  The consist definitions which can now be used are :

  c_loco + c_wagons , and for reverse : **c_loco $reverse + c_wagons $reverse**

  Please note that **$reverse** always applies only to the sub-consist with which it is defined, not for the complete combined consist.

  If this train sometimes has some additional wagons, e.g. during rush hours, the consists can be defined as follows (with **c_add** the definition of the additional wagons) :

  c_loco + c_wagons + c_add , and for reverse : **c_loco $reverse + c_add $reverse + c_wagons $reverse**

  Clearly, this can save on the definition of the total required consists, and in particular saves the tedious task of having to define 'reverse' consists.
  When using multiple units, this is even more useful.

  Suppose there are two sets of multiple units, running either as single trains or combined. Normally, six different consists would be required to cover all trains, but now only two will

suffice : **set_a** and **set_b**.

The various combinations are :

set_a , reverse **set_a $reverse**.
set_b , reverse **set_b $reverse**.
set_a + set_b , reverse **set_b $reverse + set_a $reverse**.

Consist strings which contain '+' or '$' can be used in timetables but must be enclosed by < >. For instance :

<loco+wagon>+<$loco+wagon>$reverse

- **#Start row**

The #start row defines the time at which the train is started. It must be defined as HH:mm, and the 24 hour clock must be used. This field is compulsory.

Use of start time for AI trains :

When a train is formed out of another train and this other train is included to run in the timetable, the time defined in #start is only used to define when the train becomes active.

Use of start time for player train :

The time as defined in #start is normally used as the start time of the timetable 'activity'.

If a train is formed out of another train and this train is included in the timetable, then if this train is delayed and has not arrived before the defined start time, the starting of this train is also delayed until the train out of which it is formed has arrived. **This applies to both AI and player train.** This means that the start of the player activity can be delayed.

For details on starting and running of trains around midnight see the paragraph below.

The #start field can also contain the following command:
$create[=<time>] [/ahead=<train>]

The $create command will create that train at the time as indicated. If no time is set, the train will be created before the start of the first train. The train will be 'static' until the time as set as start time.
The normal rules for train placement still apply, so a train cannot be placed onto a section of track already occupied by another train.

However, storage sidings often hold multiple trains. To allow for this, and to ensure the trains are stored in proper order (first one out up front), the parameter [/ahead=<train>] must be used.
The train will now be placed ahead of the referenced train, in the direction of the train's path. Multiple trains can be stored on a single siding, but care must be taken to set the proper references. The reference must always be to the previous train - two trains cannot reference the same train in the /ahead parameter as that would cause conflict.
If the total length of all trains exceeds the length of the sidings, the trains will 'spill out' onto

whatever lies beyond.
Note that a train referenced in an **/ahead** parameter must be created before or at the same time as the train which uses that reference.

- **#Note row**
- The #note row can be used to defined control commands which are not location related but apply to the full run of the train. It can also be used to set commands for trains which do not stop at or pass through any defined location. This row is optional.

  The following commands can be inserted in the #note field of each train:

- **$acc=n**
  $dec=n

  These commands set multiplication factors for the acceleration (**$acc**) and deceleration (**$dec**) values used for that train.

  The program uses average acceleration and deceleration values for all trains (difference values for freight, passenger and high speed trains). But these values are not always adequate, especially for modern trains. This can lead to delays when trying to run to a real life timetable.
  Using the **$acc** and **$dec** commands, the values used can be modified. Note that these commands do not define an actual value, but define a factor; the default value will be multiplied by this factor.
  However, setting a higher value for acceleration and deceleration does not mean that the trains will always accelerate and decelerate faster according to the set value. Most of the **time, the train behaviour is controlled through the physics.**
  But especially the **$dec** factor does have an important side effect. The deceleration value is also used to calculate the expected required braking distance. Setting a higher deceleration will reduce the required braking distance, allowing the train to continue to run at maximum allowed speed for longer distances. This can have a significant effect on the timing.
  Take care, though, not to set the value too high - the calculated braking distance must of course be sufficient to allow for proper braking, otherwise the train cannot stop in time resulting in SPADs etc.
  A typical value for modern stock for the **$dec** command is 2 or 3.

  #Dispose row

  The #dispose row defines what happens to an AI train when it has reached the end of its run, i.e. it has reached the end of the defined path.
  The information in the #dispose row can detail if the train is to be formed into another train, and, if so, how and where. For details see the commands as described further down.
  This row is optional and if included, the use per train is also optional.
  If the row is not included or the field is not set for a particular train, the train is removed from the activity after it has terminated.
  The #dispose row presently does not affect the end of the run for the player train.

11.4.7 Control commands

11.4.7.1 General

Control commands can be set to control train and signaling behaviour and actions.
There are four sets of commands available :

- Location commands
- Train control commands
- Create commands
- Dispose commands

11.4.7.2 Command syntax

All commands have the same basic syntax.

A command consists of :

Syntax name : defines the control command.

Syntax value : set the value related to the command.
Not all commands take a value.

Syntax qualifiers : adds additional information to the command.
Not all commands have qualifiers.
Some qualifiers may be optional but others may be compulsory, or compulsory only in combination with other qualifiers.

Syntax qualifier values : a qualifier may require a value

Command syntax :

$name = value /qualifier=value

Multiple values may be set, separated by '+'.
Note that any qualifiers always apply to all values.

11.4.7.3 Train Reference

Many commands require a reference to another train.

This reference is the other train's name as defined in the first row.

11.4.7.4 Location Commands

Location commands are :

$hold

$forcehold

$nowaitsignal

$terminal

These commands are also available as train control commands and are detailed in that paragraph.

11.4.7.5 Train control commands.

All available train control commands are detailed below.

These commands can be set for each timing cell, i.e. at each intersection of train column and location row. The commands will apply at and from the location onward (if applicable).

Some commands can also be set in the #note row, in which case they apply from the start of the train. These commands are indicated below by an asterisk (*) behind the command name

The commands $hold and $nosignalwait can also be set as location commands.

$hold, $nohold and $forcehold

If $hold is set, it defines that the exit signal for that location must be held at danger up to 2 minutes before train departure.

An exit signal is allocated to a platform if this signal is beyond the end platform marker (in the direction of travel), but is still within the same track node - so there must not be any points etc. between the platform marker and the signal.
By default, the signal will not be held.
If set per location, it will apply to all trains, but can be overridden for any specific train by defining $nohold in that train's column.
If set per train, it will apply to that train only.

$forcehold will set the first signal beyond the platform as the 'hold' signal, even if this signal is not allocated to the platform as exit signal. This can be useful at locations with complex layout where signals are not directly at the platform ends, but not holding the signals could lead to delay to other trains.

$callon

This will allow a train to 'call on' into a platform occupied by another train.

For full details, see the discussion above on the relationship between signalling and timetable.

$connect

Syntax : $connect=<train> /maxdelay=n /hold=h

Defines that a train is to wait at a station until another train has arrived, so as to let passengers make the connection between the trains.

The train will be timetabled to allow this connection, and the $connect command is set to maintain this connection if the arriving train is running late.

Note that the $connect command will not lock the signal. If the paths of this train and the arriving train conflict before the arriving train reaches the station, additional $wait or $hold commands must be set to avoid deadlock.

Command value : reference to train which is to be waited for, this is compulsory.

Command qualifiers :

/maxdelay=n : n is the maximum delay (in minutes) of the arriving train for which this train is held.

If the delay of the arriving train exceeds this value the train will not wait. The maximum delay is independent from this train's own delay.
This qualifier and its value are compulsory.

/hold=h : h is the time (**in minutes**) the train is still held after the other train has arrived, and relates to the time required by the passengers to make the connection.
This qualifier and its value are compulsory.

$wait *

Syntax : $wait=<train> /maxdelay=n /notstarted /owndelay=n

Defines that a train is to wait for the referenced train to allow this train to proceed first.
The referenced train can be routed in the same or the opposite direction as this train itself.
A search is done for the first track section which is common to both trains, starting at the location where the $wait is defined, or at the start of the path if defined in the #note row.
If the start location is already common for both trains, then first a search is done for the first section which is not common to both trains, and the wait is applied to the next first common section beyond that.

If the wait is set, the section will not be cleared for this train until the referenced train has passed this section. This will force the train to wait. The referenced train must exist for the wait to be valid.

However, if /notstarted is set, the wait will also be set even if the referenced train has not yet been started. This can be used where the wait position is very close to the start position of the referenced train, and there is a risk that the train may clear the section before the referenced train is started.

Care should be taken when defining a $wait at a location where the train is to reverse. As the search is performed for the active subpath only, a $wait defined at a location where the train is to reverse will not be effective as the common section will be in the next subpath after the reversal. In such a situation, the train should be 'split' into two separate definitions, one up to the reversal location and another starting at that location.

Command value : referenced train, this is compulsory.

Command qualifiers :

/maxdelay=n : n is the maximum delay (in minutes) of the referenced train for which the wait is still valid.

This delay is compensated for any delay of the train which is to wait, e.g. if maxdelay is 5 minutes, the referenced train has a delay of 8 minutes but this train itself has a delay of 4 minutes, the compensated delay is 4 minutes and so the wait is still valid.
This parameter is optional, if not set a maxdelay of 0 minutes is set as default.

/notstarted : the wait will also be applied if the referenced train has not yet started.

/owndelay = n (n is delay in minutes); the owndelay qualifier command makes the command valid only if the train in question is delayed by at least the total minutes as set for the owndelay qualifier.
This can be used to hold a late-running train such that is does not cause additional delays to other trains, in particular on single track sections.

$follow *

Syntax : $follow=<train> /maxdelay=n /owndelay=n

This command is very similar to the $wait command, but in this case it is applied to each common section of both trains beyond a part of the route which was not common.
The train is controlled such that at each section where the paths of the trains re-join after a section which was not common, the train will only proceed if the referenced train has passed that position. The command therefore works as a $wait which is repeated for each such section.
The command can only be set for trains routed in the same direction.
When a wait location is found and the train is due to be held, a special check is performed to ensure the rear of the train is not in the path of the referenced train or, if it is, the referenced train has already cleared that position. Otherwise, a deadlock would result, with the referenced train not being able to pass the train which is waiting for it.

Command value : referenced train, this is compulsory.

Command qualifiers :

/maxdelay=n : n is the **maximum** delay (**in minutes**) of the referenced train for which the wait is still valid.
This delay is compensated by any delay of the train which is to wait, e.g. if maxdelay is 5 minutes, the referenced train has a delay of 8 minutes but this train itself has a delay of 4 minutes, the compensated delay is 4 minutes and thus the wait is still valid.
This parameter is optional, if not set a maxdelay of 0 minutes is set as default.

/owndelay = n (n is delay in *minutes*); the owndelay qualifier command makes the command valid only if the train in question is delayed by at least the total minutes as set for the owndelay qualifier.
This can be used to hold a late-running train such that is does not cause additional delays to other trains, in particular on single track sections.

$waitany *

Syntax : $waitany=<path> /both

This command will set a wait for any train which is on the path section as defined.

If the qualifier /both is set, the wait will be applied for any train regardless of its direction, otherwise the wait is set only for trains heading in the same direction as the definition of the path.

The path defined in the waitany command must have a common section with the path of the train itself, otherwise no waiting position can be found.

This command can be set to control trains to wait beyond the normal signal or deadlock rules. For instance, it can be used to perform a check for a train which is to leave a siding or yard, checking the line the train is to join for any trains approaching on that line, for a distance further back than signalling would normally clear, so as to ensure it does not get into the path of any train approaching on that line.

With the /both qualifier set, it can be used at the terminating end of single track lines to ensure a train does not enter that section beyond the last passing loop if there is another train already in that section as this could lead to irrecoverable deadlocks.

$[no]waitsignal

Syntax : $waitsignal

$nowaitsignal

Normally, if a train is stopped at a station and the next signal ahead is still at danger, the train will not depart. But, there are situations where this should be overruled.

Some stations are 'free line' stations - that is, they are not controlled by signals (usually small halts, without any switches).
The next signal probably is a 'normal' block signal and may be some distance from the station. In that situation, the train does not have to wait for that signal to clear in order to depart.
Other situation are for freight trains, light engines and empty stock, which also usually do not wait for the signal to clear but draw up to the signal so as to take as little as time as possible to exit the station.

The **$nowaitsignal** qualifier can be set per station (in the station column), or per train.
If set per station, it can be overruled by **$waitsignal** per train.

$terminal

The $terminal command changes the calculation of the stop position, and makes the train stop at the terminating end of the platform.
Whether the platform is really a terminating platform, and at which end it terminates, is determined by a check of the train's path.
If the platform is in the first section of a train's path, or there are no junctions in the path leading up to the section which holds the platform, it is assumed the train starts at a terminal platform and the end of the train is placed close to the start of the platform.
If the platform is in the last section if the path or there are no junctions beyond the section which holds the platform, it is assumed the platform is at the end of the train's path and the train will run up to near the end of the platform in its direction of travel.
If neither condition is met, it is assumed it is not a terminal platform after all, and the normal stop position is calculated.
The $terminal option can be set for a station, or for individual trains. If set for a station it

cannot be overruled by a train.
However, because of the logic as described above, if set for a station which has both terminal platforms as well as through platforms, trains with paths continuing through those platforms will have the normal stop positions.

11.4.7.6 Dispose Commands.

Dispose commands can be set in the #dispose row to define what is to be done with the train after it has terminated.
See special notes below on the behaviour of the player train when it is formed out of another train by a dispose command, or when the player train itself has a dispose command.

$forms

Syntax : $forms=<train> /runround=<path> /rrime=time /setstop

$forms defines which new train is to be formed out of this train when the train terminates.
The consist of the new train is formed out of the consist of the terminating train and any consist definition for the new train is ignored.
The new train will be 'static' until the time as defined in #start row for that train. This means that the new train will not try to clear its path, signals etc., and will not move even if it is not in a station.
If the incoming train is running late, and its arrival time is later as the start time of the new train, the start of the new train is also delayed but the new train will immediately become active as soon as it is formed.
For locomotive-hauled trains, it can be defined that the engine(s) must run round the train in order for the train to move in the opposite direction. The runround qualifier needs a path which defines the path the engine(s) is to take when performing the runround. If the train has more than one leading engine, all engines will be run round. Any other power units within the train will not be moved.
For specific rules and conditions for runround to work, see discussion on the relationship between signalling and the timetable concept.
If runround is defined, the time at which the runround is to take place can be defined. If this time is not set, the runround will take place immediately on termination of the incoming train.

Command value : referenced train, this is compulsory.

Command qualifiers :

/runround=<path> : <path> is the path to be used by the engine to perform the runround.
This qualifier is optional; if set, the value is compulsory.

/rrtime=time: time is the definition of the time at which the runround is to take place. The time must be defined in HH:mm and must use the 24 hour clock.
This qualifier is only valid in combination with the /runround qualifier, is optional but if set, the value is compulsory.

/setstop: if this train itself has no station stops defined but the train it is to form starts at a station, this command will copy the details of the first station stop of the formed

train, to ensure this train will stop at the correct location.
For this qualifier to work correctly, the path of the incoming train must terminate in the platform area of the departing train.
This qualifier is optional and takes no values.

$triggers

Syntax : $triggers=<train>

$triggers also defines which new train is to be formed out of this train when the train terminates.

However, when this command is used, the new train will be formed using the consist definition of the new train and the existing consist is removed.

Command value : referenced train, this is compulsory.

$static

Syntax : $ static

The train will become a 'static' train after it has terminated.

Command value : none.

$stable

Syntax : $stable /out_path=<path> /out_time=time /in_path=<path> /in_time=time /static /runround=<path> /rrtime= time /rrpos=<runround position> /forms=<train> /triggers=<train>

$stable is an extended form of either $forms, $triggers or $static, where the train is moved to another location before the related command is performed. In case of /forms or /triggers, the train can move back to the same or to another location where the new train actually starts. Note that in these cases, the train has to make two moves, outward and inward.

A runround can be performed in case /forms is defined.

If /triggers is defined, the change of consist will take place at the 'stable' position. Any reversal(s) in the inward path, or at the final inward position, are taken into account when the new train is build, such that the consist is facing the correct direction when the new train is formed at the final inward position.

The $stable can be used where a train forms another train but when the train must clear the platform before the new train can be formed to allow other trains to use that platform. It can also be used to move a train to a siding after completing its last duty, and be 'stabled' there as static train.

Separate timings can be defined for each move; if such a time is not defined, the move will take place immediately when the previous move is completed.

If timings are defined, the train will be 'static' after completion of the previous move until that required time.

If the formed train has a valid station stop and the return path of the stable command (in_path) terminates in the area of the platform of the first station stop of the formed train, the 'setstop' check (see setstop qualifier in $forms command) will automatically be added

Command value : none.

Command qualifiers :

/out_path=<path> : <path> is the path to be used by the train to move out to the 'stable' position. The start of the path must match the end of the path of the incoming train.

/out_time = time : time definition when the outward run must be started. Time is defined as HH:mm and must use the 24 hour clock.

/in_path=<path> : <path> is the path to be used by the train for the inward run from the 'stable' position to the start of the new train. The start of the path must match the end of the out_path, the end of the path must match the start of the path for the new train.

/in_time = time : time definition when the inward run must be started. Time is defined as HH:mm and must use the 24 hour clock.

/runround=<path> : <path> is the path to be used by the engine to perform the runround. For details, see the $forms command definition of the time at which the runround is to take place. The time must be defined in HH:mm and must use the 24 hour clock.

/rrtime=time : time is the definition of the time at which the runaround is to take place. The time must be defined in HH:mm and must use the 24 hour clock.

/rrpos = <runround position> : the position within the 'stable' move at which the runround is to take place.

Possible values :

out : the runround will take place before the outward move is started.

stable : the runround will take place at the 'stable' position.

in : the runround will take place after completion of the inward move.

/static : train will become a 'static' train after completing the outward move.

/forms=<train> : train will form the new train after completion of the inward move. See the $forms command for details.

/triggers=<train>: train will trigger the new train after completion of the inward move. The train will change to the consist of the new train at the 'stable' position. See the $triggers command for details.

Use of command qualifiers :

In combination with /static :

/out_path : compulsory

/out_time : optional

In combination with /forms :

/out_path : compulsory

/out_time : optional

/in_path : compulsory

/in_time : optional

/runround : optional

/rrtime : optional, only valid if /runround is set

/rrpos : compulsory if /runround is set, otherwise not valid

In combination with /triggers :

/out_path : compulsory

/out_time : optional

/in_path : compulsory

/in_time : optional

11.5 Additional Notes on Timetables

11.5.1 Static Trains

A static train can be defined by setting $static in the top row (e.g. as the 'name' of that train).
Consist and path are still required - the path is used to determine where the consist is placed (rear end of train at start of path).
No start-time is required.
The train will be created from the start of the timetable - but it cannot be used for anything within a timetable. It cannot be referenced in any command etc., as it has no name. At present, it is also not possible to couple to a static train - see below for details.
Note that there are some differences between timetable and activity mode in the way that static trains are generated.
In activity mode, the train is an instance of the Train class, with type STATIC.
In timetable mode, the train is an instance of the TTTrain class (as are all trains in timetable mode), with type AI, movement AI_STATIC.
This difference may lead to different behaviour with respect to sound, smoke and lights.

11.5.2 Processing of #dispose Command For Player Train

When the player train terminates and a #dispose command is set for that train to form another train (either $form, $trigger or $stable), the train will indeed form the next train as detailed, and that next train will now be the new player train. So the player can continue with that train, for instance on a return journey.
On forming the new train, the train will become 'Inactive'. This is a new state, in which the train is not authorized to move.
Note that the F4 Track Monitor information is not updated when the train is 'Inactive'. The “Next Station” display in the F10 Activity Monitor will show details on when the train is due to start. The train will become 'active' at the start-time as defined for the formed train. For information, the Activity Monitor window shows the name of the train which the player is running.

11.5.3 Termination of a Timetable Run

On reaching the end of a timetable run, the program will not be terminated automatically but has to be terminated by the player.

11.5.4 Calculation of Running Delay

An approximate value of the delay is continuously updated. This approximation is derived from the booked arrival time at the next station. If the present time is later as the booked arrival, and that difference exceeds the present delay, the delay is set to that difference. The time required to reach that station is not taken into account.
This approximation will result in better regulation where /maxdelay or /owndelay parameters are used.

11.5.5 No Automatic Coupling

There is logic within the program which for any stopped train checks if it is close enough to another train to couple to this train. It is this logic which allows the player train to couple to any static train.
However, this logic contains some actions which do not match the processing of timetable trains. *Therefore this has now been disabled for timetable mode. Presently, therefore, coupling of trains is not possible in timetable mode except for runround commands in dispose options.*
Also uncoupling through the F9 window could be disabled in the near future for timetable mode.
In due course, new attach/detach functions will be included in the timetable concept to replace the existing functions.

11.5.6 Signalling Requirements and Timetable Concept

11.5.6.1 General

The timetable concept is more demanding of the performance of the signalling system than 'normal' activities. The main reason for this is that the timetable will often have AI trains running in both directions, including trains running ahead of the player train in the same direction as the player train. There are very few activities with such situations as no effort would of course be made to define trains in an activity which would never be seen, but also because MSTS could not always properly handle such a situation.

Any flaws in signalling, e.g. signals clearing the path of a train too far ahead, will immediately have an effect on the running of a timetable.

If signals clear too far ahead on a single track line, for instance, it means trains will clear through passing loops too early, which leads to very long waits for trains in the opposite direction. This, in turn, can lead to lock-ups as multiple trains start to converge on a single set of passing loops.

Similar situations can occur at large, busy stations - if trains clear their path through such a station too early, it will lead to other trains being kept waiting to enter or exit the station.
If 'forms' or 'triggers' commands are used to link reversing trains, the problem is exacerbated as any delays for the incoming train will work through on the return working.

11.5.6.2 Call On Signal Aspect

Signalling systems may allow a train to 'call on', i.e. allow a train onto a section of track already occupied by another train (also known as permissive working).

The difference between 'call on' and 'permissive signals' (STOP and PROCEED aspects) is that the latter is also allowed if the train in the section is moving (in the same direction), but 'call on' generally is only allowed if the train in the section is at a standstill.

When a signal allows 'call on', AI trains will always pass this signal and run up to a pre-defined distance behind the train in the section.

In station areas, this can lead to real chaos as trains may run into platforms occupied by other trains such that the total length of both trains far exceeds the platform length, so the second train will block the 'station throat' stopping all other trains. This can easily lead to a complete lock-up of all traffic in and around the station.

To prevent this, calling on should be blocked in station areas even if the signalling would allow it. To allow a train to ‘call on’ when this is required in the timetable, the $callon command must be set which overrules the overall block. This applies to both AI and player train

In case the train is to attach to another train in the platform, calling on is automatically set.

Because of the inability of AI trains in MSTS to stop properly behind another train if 'called on' onto an occupied track, most signalling systems do not support 'call on' aspects but instead rely on the use of 'permission requests'. AI trains cannot issue such a request, therefore in such systems $callon will not work.

In this situation, attach commands can also not work in station areas.

Note that the 'runround' command also requires 'call on' ability for the final move of the engine back to the train to attach to it. Therefore, when performed in station areas, also the runround can only work if the signalling supports 'call on'.

Special signalling functions are available to adapt signals to function as described above, which can be used in the scripts for relevant signals in the sigscr file.

The function "TRAINHASCALLON()" will return 'true' if the section beyond the signal up to the next signal includes a platform where the train is booked to stop, and the train has the 'callon' flag set. This function will also return 'true' if there is no platform in the section beyond the signal.

The function "TRAINHASCALLON_RESTRICTED" returns 'true' in similar conditions, except that it always returns 'false' if there is no platform in the section beyond the signal.

Both functions must be used in combination with BLOCK_STATE = BLOCK_OCCUPIED.

11.5.6.3 Wait Commands and Passing Paths

From the location where the 'wait' or 'follow' is defined, a search is made for the first common section for both trains, following on from a section where the paths are not common.

However, on single track routes with passing loops where 'passing paths' are defined for both trains, the main path of the trains will run over the same tracks in the passing loops and therefore no not-common sections will be found. As a result, the waiting point cannot find a location for the train to wait and therefore the procedure will not work.

If waiting points are used on single track lines, the trains must have their paths running over different tracks through the passing loop in order for the waiting points to work properly.

It is a matter of choice by the timetable creator to either pre-set passing locations using the wait

commands, or let the system work out the passing locations using the passing paths.

11.5.6.4 Wait Commands and Permissive Signals

The 'wait' and 'follow' commands are processed through the 'blockstate' of the signal control.
If at the location where the train is to wait permissive signals are used, and these signals allow a 'proceed' aspect on blockstate JN_OBSTRUCTED, the 'wait' or 'follow' command will not work as the train will not be stopped.

11.5.6.5 Running Trains Around Midnight.

A timetable can be defined for a full 24 hour day, and so would include trains running around midnight.

The following rules apply for the player train :

- Train booked to start before midnight will be started at the end of the day, but will continue to run if terminating after midnight.
- Trains formed out of other trains starting before midnight will NOT be started if the incoming train is delayed and as a result the start time is moved after midnight.
  In this situation, the activity is aborted.
- Trains booked to start after midnight will instead be started at the beginning of the day.

The following rules apply for AI trains :

- Trains booked to start before midnight will be started at the end of the day, but will continue to run if terminating after midnight.
- Trains formed out of other trains starting before midnight will still be started if the incoming train is delayed and as a result the start time is moved after midnight.
- Trains booked to start after midnight will instead be started at the beginning of the day.

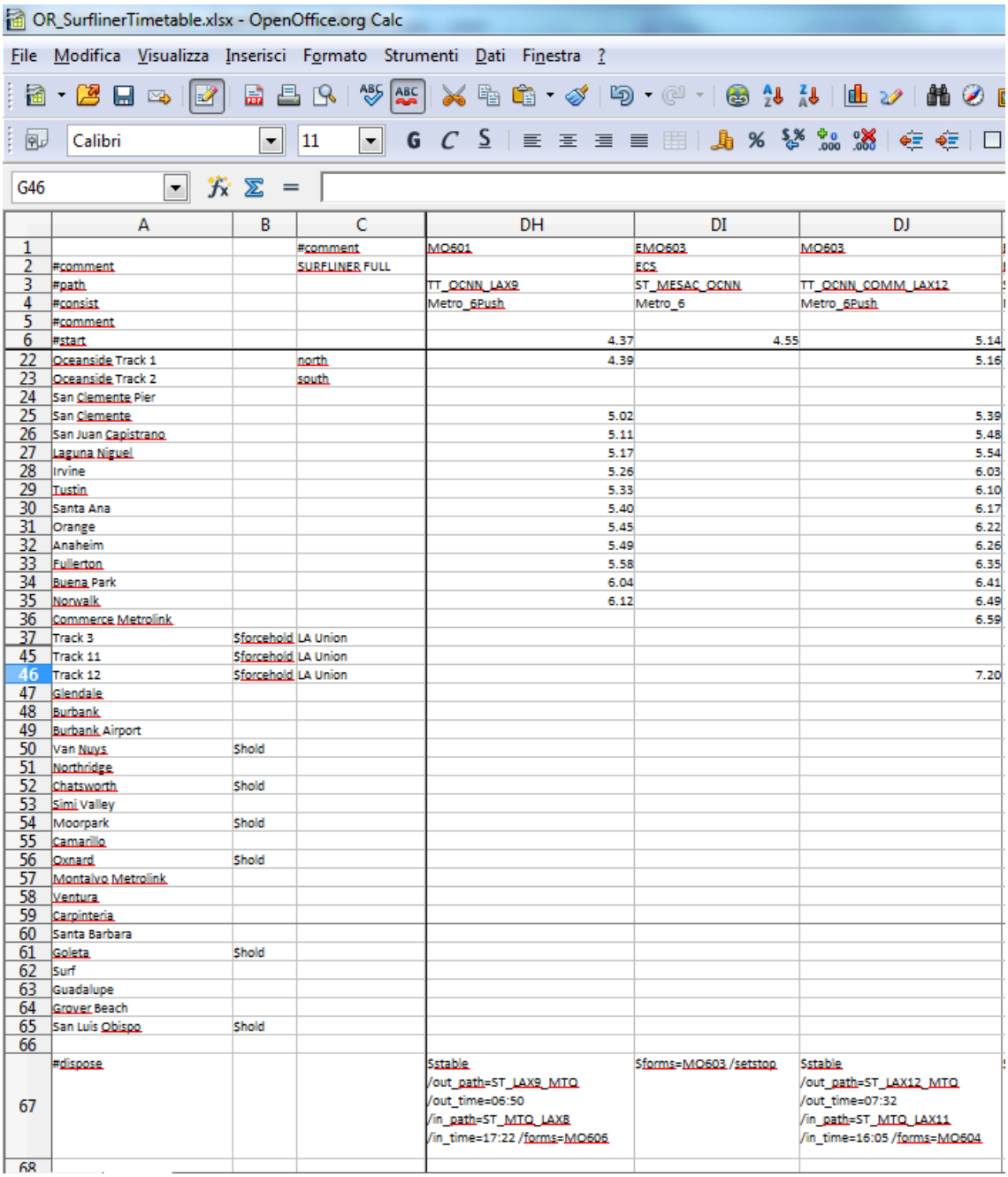
As a result of these rules, it is not really possible to run an activity around or through midnight with all required AI trains included.

11.5.7 Known Problems

- If a #dispose command is processed for the player train , and the new train runs in the opposite direction, the reverser will 'jump' to the reverse state on forming that new train.
- A run-round command defined in a #dispose command cannot yet be processed. It will be necessary to switch to Manual to perform that run-round.
- If two trains are to be placed on a single siding using $create with /ahead qualifier, but the trains have paths in opposite directions, the trains may be placed in incorrect positions.
- If the /binary qualifier is set for #path, but the OpenRails subdirectory in the Paths directory does not exist, the program will not be able to load any paths.

11.6 Example of a Timetable File

Here is an excerpt of a timetable file (shown in Excel):



OR_SurflinerTimetable.xlsx - OpenOffice.org Calc

File Modifica Visualizza Inserisci Formato Strumenti Dati Finestra ?

Calibri 11

G46

	A	B	C	DH	DI	DJ
1			#comment	MO601	EMO603	MO603
2	#comment		SURFLINER FULL		ECS	
3	#path			TT_OCNN_LAX9	ST_MESAC_OCNN	TT_OCNN_COMM_LAX12
4	#consist			Metro_6Push	Metro_6	Metro_6Push
5	#comment					
6	#start			4.37	4.55	5.14
22	Oceanside Track 1		north	4.39		5.16
23	Oceanside Track 2		south			
24	San Clemente Pier					
25	San Clemente			5.02		5.39
26	San Juan Capistrano			5.11		5.48
27	Laguna Niguel			5.17		5.54
28	Irvine			5.26		6.03
29	Tustin			5.33		6.10
30	Santa Ana			5.40		6.17
31	Orange			5.45		6.22
32	Anaheim			5.49		6.26
33	Fullerton			5.58		6.35
34	Buena Park			6.04		6.41
35	Norwalk			6.12		6.49
36	Commerce Metrolink					6.59
37	Track 3	$forcehold	LA Union			
45	Track 11	$forcehold	LA Union			
46	Track 12	$forcehold	LA Union			7.20
47	Glendale					
48	Burbank					
49	Burbank Airport					
50	Van Nuys	$hold				
51	Northridge					
52	Chatsworth	$hold				
53	Simi Valley					
54	Moorpark	$hold				
55	Camarillo					
56	Oxnard	$hold				
57	Montalvo Metrolink					
58	Ventura					
59	Carpinteria					
60	Santa Barbara					
61	Goleta	$hold				
62	Surf					
63	Guadalupe					
64	Grover Beach					
65	San Luis Obispo	$hold				
66						
67	#dispose			$stable /out_path=ST_LAX9_MTQ /out_time=06:50 /in_path=ST_MTQ_LAX8 /in_time=17:22 /forms=MO606	$forms=MO603 /setstop	$stable /out_path=ST_LAX12_MTQ /out_time=07:32 /in_path=ST_MTQ_LAX11 /in_time=16:05 /forms=MO604
68						

11.7 What tools are available to develop a Timetable?

It is recommended to use a powerful stand-alone program (Excel is not required) , called Timetable Editor. It is included in the OR pack, and accessed from the “Tools” button on the OR menu..

12 Open Rails Multi-Player

12.1 Goal

The Multi-Player mode implemented in this stage is intended for friends to play OR together, each assuming the role of a train engineer operating a train. There is a built-in way to compose and send text messages, but there is no built-in tool for chatting, thus players are encouraged to use Ventrillo, Skype, MSN, Yahoo, Teamspeak or other tools to communicate vocally.

The current release utilizes a peer-to-peer mode, thus each player must start and run OR on their computer. A special server was deployed so you may not need to set up a server from your own computer.

12.2 Getting Started

One player starts as the server, and then the others connect as clients. Each player will choose and operate their own consist (and locomotive), but also can jump to watch others' consists, or couple with others to work as lead and DPU through a tough route, or even act as a dispatcher to control signals and switches manually.

12.3 Requirements

The server can start an activity or choose to explore. Clients MUST choose to explore (or a simple activity with timetable but no AI trains).

The client must select the same route played by the server.

It is not required for everyone to have the same set of paths, rolling stocks and consists.

12.4 Technical Issues

If you start the server at home, it will be necessary for you to learn your public IP address. You may also need to configure your router for port forwarding. Details to accomplish these are given in sections that follow.

It is recommended that you do not run a server for a prolonged period as the code has not been tightened for security. Only tell people you trust that you have a server started.

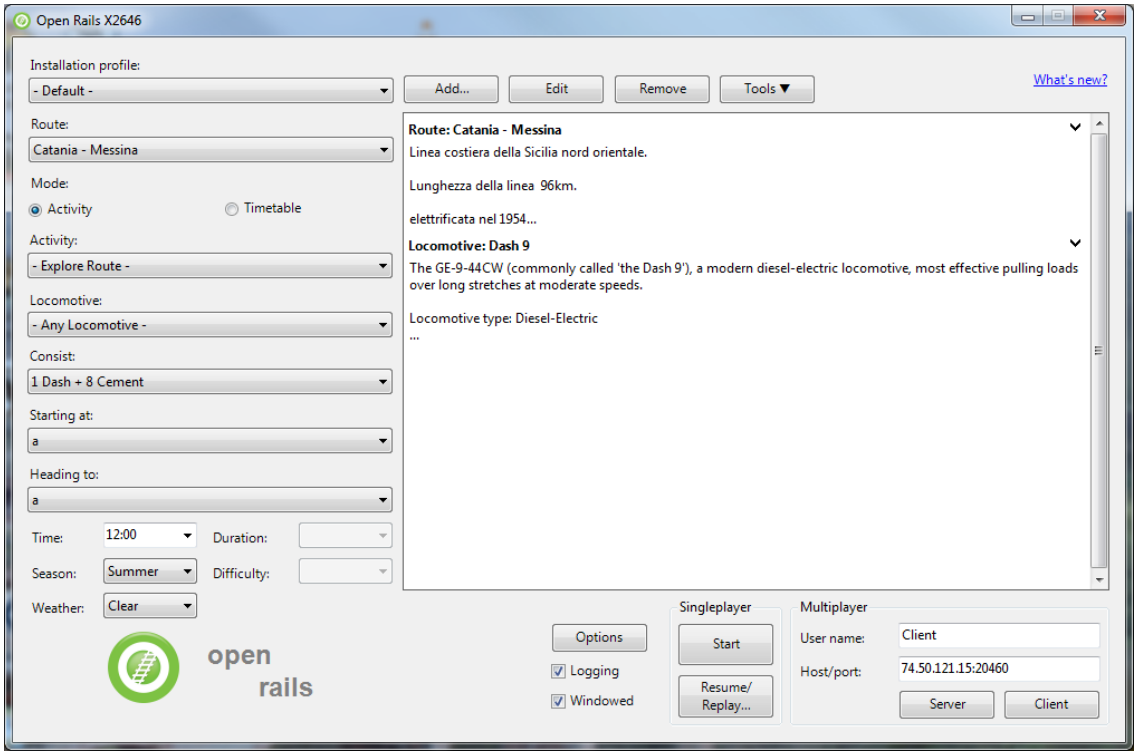
12.5 Technical Support

You can ask questions in the following forums: trainsim.com, elvastower.com, uktrainsim.com, etc.

A web forum has been set for you to post questions and announce servers. You can also request a private club so that only your friends know of your server. The forum is free to join and post: http://www.tsimserver.com/forums

12.6 Starting a Multi-Player Session

12.6.1 Starting as Server



On the OR main menu you select in a standard way as described in the "Getting started" chapter on the left side Route, activity or explore route, and in case of explore route you select as usual locomotive, consist, path, time, season and weather.

On the lower right side you enter your User Name and the host and port address. If you want to run as standalone server, or if you want to have more than instance of OR running in MP mode on the same computer, you must set Host/port to 127.0.0.1:30000. 30000 is the default port, but you can change to any integer between 10000 and 65536.

If you want to run in a local area network usually valid host addresses are 192.168.1.2 or 192.168.1.1.

After having inserted the Username and Host/port data you click on "Server"

When server starts, Windows Firewall may ask if you want to allow OR access to the Internet. If so, click **Allow**. If you use other firewall software, you may need to configure it to allow OpenRails to access the Internet.

There is no built-in limit of how many players can connect; a server with good Internet upload bandwidth can be expected to handle at least 10 client connections.

12.6.2 Starting as Client

On the left side of the main menu you must enter only route, path and consist. The other parameters are received from the server.

On the right side you enter your username, IP address and port of the server, and click on “Client”

12.7 In-Game Controls

Once the server and clients have started and connected, to display MultiPlayer status you must press F5 to display the basic HUD; at the bottom of it you will see the information. You can watch how many players and trains are present and how far away you are from others. You can also look if you are acting as dispatcher (the server always is the dispatcher) or as client.

A player joined will have the same weather, time and season as the server, no matter what are the original choices.

The player train may join the world and find that it is inside another train. Don’t panic, you have two minutes to move your train out before OR thinks you want to couple with that train.

AI trains are added by the server and broadcast to all players. As a client, do not start an activity with AI trains; moreover it is recommended that you start in Explore mode on the client.

You can jump to see other trains in sequence by pressing Alt+9. OpenRails will cycle through all trains active on the server with each key press. As some trains may be far away, OpenRails may need a few seconds to load the surrounding scenery. Thus you may temporarily see a blank screen. You can press F7 to see train names. You can press 9 to return to seeing your own train.

Locations of trains from other players are sent over the Internet. Because Internet routings vary moment to moment there may be some lag, and trains may jump a bit as OpenRails tries to update the locations with information received.

You can couple/decouple as usual. As coupling is controlled in the server, a player needs to drive slowly so that the server will have accurate information of train positions. If two player trains couple together, one of them will become a helper, and a message will be shown on the left indicating that the player is in Helper mode. A player in Helper mode cannot control their consist as it falls under control of the lead locomotive. By pressing Shift+E you can swap Helper status with another player on the train. Always press \ and Shift+/ to reset brakes each time after coupling/uncoupling.

Players can uncouple their own trains. Players in the uncoupled trains may need to press Shift+E to gain control; otherwise, the uncoupled trains may become a loose consist. Always stop completely before uncoupling, otherwise weird things may happen. *Players may also need to press keys for resetting brake state after uncoupling* (see here).

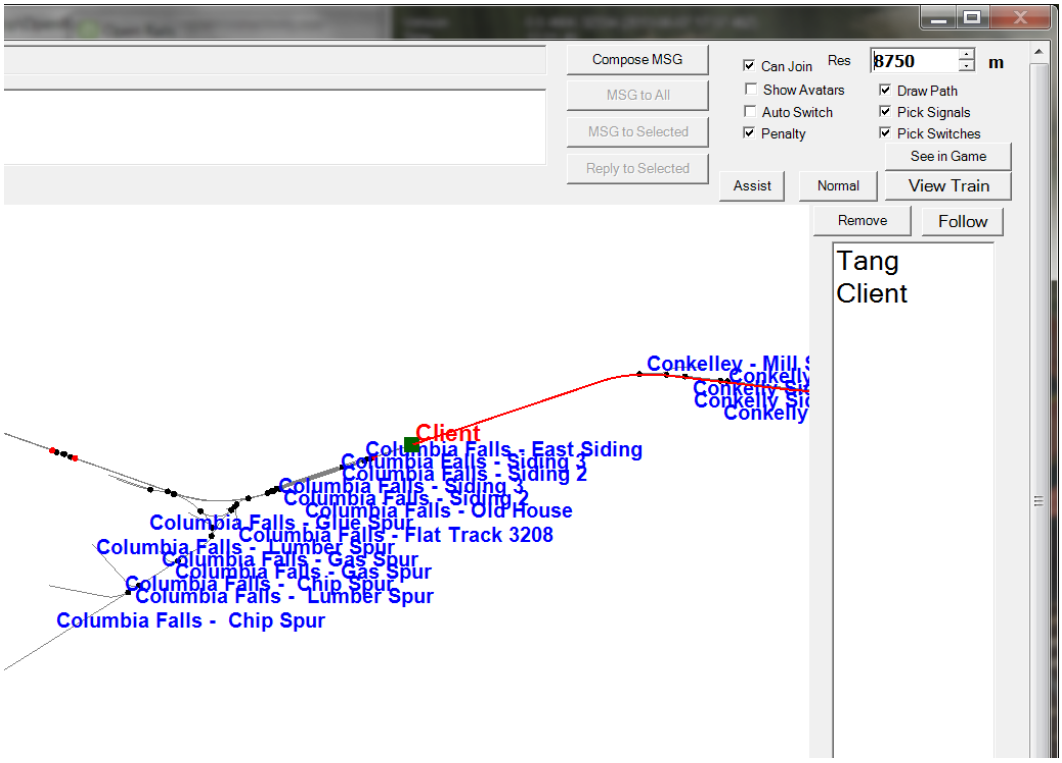
Players can throw switches by pressing G or Shift+G , and the switch state will change for all players on the server. The server has a choice to disallow clients to throw switches manually.

Both switches and signals are synchronized through the server (default every 10 seconds).

Player actions, such as sounding the horn or bell, turning on or off headlights, moving the pantograph up and down, opening and closing doors, moving the mirrors are broadcast to other players. Currently only the player controlled train has the cone of light shown.

A separate Dispatcher Window (also shown below) showing the route, signals and trains can be activated by pressing Ctrl+9. By default, it is minimized and you must click on it on the Taskbar to make it active. You can hide it by pressing Ctrl+9 again or by pressing Esc when that window has the focus. This window is an extended version of the Dispatcher Window.

You can zoom in and out by rotating the mouse wheel, or by holding both the left and right mouse button and moving the mouse (if you do not have a mouse wheel). You can hold shift key while click the mouse in a place in the map, which will quickly zoom in with that place in focus. You can hold Ctrl while click the mouse in a place in the map, which will zoom out to show the whole route. Holding Alt and click will zoom out to show part of the route.



A red line will be drawn for each train so you can find its intended path.

You can select a train either by clicking on the name in the right bar, or in the map by clicking the green train body. After that, you can click the “Remove” button to delete that train from the game.

You can pan the window by dragging it with the left mouse button.

One can click a switch (or signal) and press **Ctrl+Alt+G** to jump to that switch with the free-roam camera.

The Dispatcher player can click a switch (black dot) and choose “Main Route” or “Side Route” to switch. They can also click on a signal (green, red or orange dot) and choose to change the light.

The Dispatcher can choose a player and give the player right to throw switches and change signals, by clicking the button “Assist”. The right can be revoked by click the “Normal” button.

The Dispatcher can choose a player from the avatar list and remove that player from the game.

You can send a text message by typing in the top left text input area, and view the most recent 10 messages from the viewing area. One can send message to all after finishing it, or select some avatars and send a message to those selected.

12.8 Summary of Multi-Player Procedures

1. Server can start an activity or Explore. Clients must choose to Explore the route or start with an activity without AI trains.
2. Missing rolling stock in other players' consists will be automatically replaced by existing cars from local directory.
3. You have two minutes after joining the game to move your train out of other trains.
4. Use **Alt+9** to see other trains, **9** to see your own train, **Ctrl+9** to view/hide the dispatcher window. Use the mouse wheel to zoom and left mouse button to pan the dispatcher window.
5. We can send and read messages from the dispatcher window
6. Use **Ctrl+Alt+F11** to see the path trains will follow, and **F7** to see train names
7. Move trains slowly when trying to couple.
8. Use **** and **Shift+/** (on English keyboards) just after your train is coupled or uncoupled, or when you just gain back the control of your own train.
9. Use **Shift+E** to gain control of your own train after uncoupling.
10. Use other communication tools (such as Ventrillo or Skype) to communicate with other players.
11. Always completely stop before uncoupling trains with two players coupled together

12.9 Possible Problems

- A server may not be able to listen on the port specified. Restart the server and choose another port.
- If you cannot connect to the server, verify sure you have the correct IP address and port number, and that the server has the port opened.
- If other player have rolling stock you do not have, that train will automatically replace cars from your own folder, and this replacement may make the consist "interesting".
- You may join the game and see you've selected the same start point as someone else and that your train is inside another train. Move the trains apart within two minutes and it will be fine.
- If your train is moving too quickly when trying to couple, the process may not work and weird things can happen.
- As the server has absolute control, clients may notice the switch just changed will be changed back a few seconds later if the server controlled train wants to pass it.
- Coupling/uncoupling the same set of trains may end up with weird things.
- **Ctrl+E** locomotive switch may have train cars flipped.

12.10 Using the Public Server

A special public server is deployed so that you do not need to use your own computer as the server, avoiding the setup problems you may encounter. You can find the IP and port numbers here .

To connect to this public server you must act as described here, using IP and port numbers as found on the above link, with only a difference: the first player entering the session has to enter by clicking on “Client” and not on “Server”, even if he intends to be the dispatcher. If the port has no player yet, whoever connects first will be declared the dispatcher, others connected later will be normal players.

The public server runs a special code that is not part of OR. If you plan to run such a server for free, please contact the email listed in http://tsimserver.com/forums/showthread.php?2560.

12.10.1 Additional info on using the Public Server

- If the computer of the player acting as dispatcher crashes or if the connection with it breaks down, the public server will try to appoint another player as dispatcher. Such player will receive on his monitor the following message: “`You are the new dispatcher. Enjoy!`”
- If a client crashes or loses the connection, its position is held by the server for about two minutes. If the client re-enters the game within such time frame, it will re-enter the game in the position where he was at the moment of the crash.

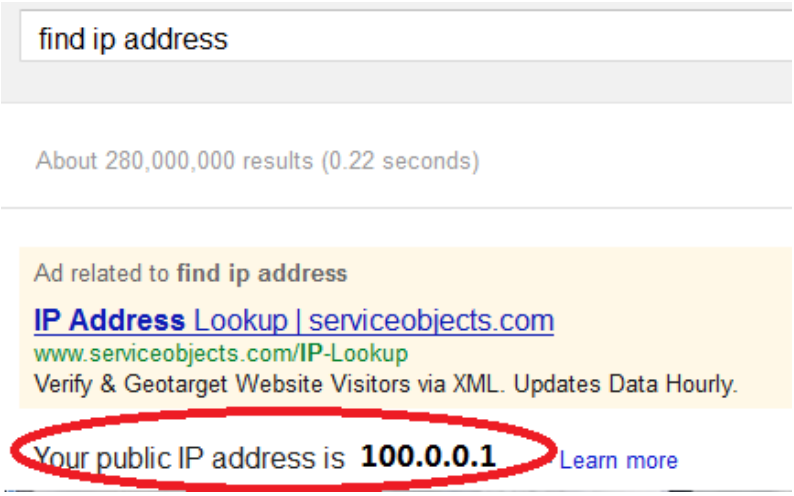
13 Multi-Player: Setting up a Server from Your Own Computer

As any online game, you need to do some extra work if you want to host a multiplayer session.

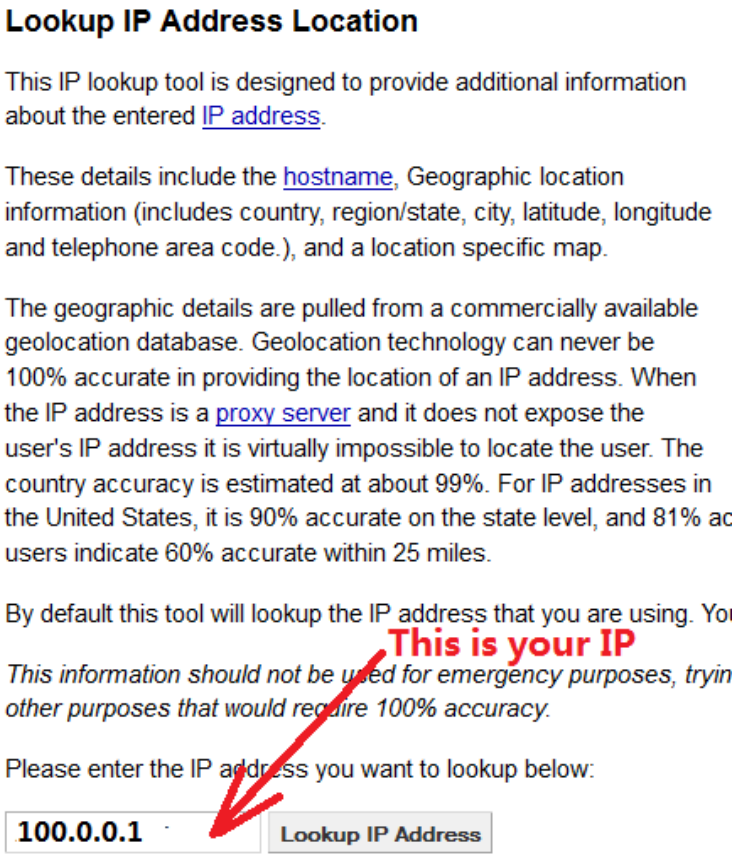
13.1 IP Address

If you are running at home and use a router, you may not have a permanent IP. Thus before you start as a server, you must find your IP. The quickest ways are the following:

1. Using Google: type in “find ip address”, then Google will tell you


find ip address
About 280,000,000 results (0.22 seconds)
Ad related to find ip address
IP Address Lookup | serviceobjects.com
www.serviceobjects.com/IP-Lookup
Verify & Geotarget Website Visitors via XML. Updates Data Hourly.
Your public IP address is 100.0.0.1
Learn more

2. If the above does not work, try http://whatismyipaddress.com/ip-lookup/, which shows your IP in the middle of the page.

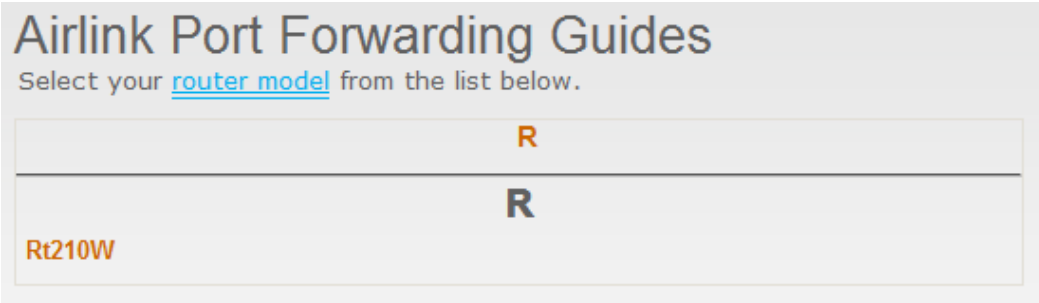

Lookup IP Address Location
This IP lookup tool is designed to provide additional information about the entered IP address.
These details include the hostname, Geographic location information (includes country, region/state, city, latitude, longitude and telephone area code.), and a location specific map.
The geographic details are pulled from a commercially available geolocation database. Geolocation technology can never be 100% accurate in providing the location of an IP address. When the IP address is a proxy server and it does not expose the user's IP address it is virtually impossible to locate the user. The country accuracy is estimated at about 99%. For IP addresses in the United States, it is 90% accurate on the state level, and 81% ac users indicate 60% accurate within 25 miles.
By default this tool will lookup the IP address that you are using. Yo
This is your IP
This information should not be used for emergency purposes, tryin other purposes that would require 100% accuracy.
Please enter the IP address you want to lookup below:
100.0.0.1
Lookup IP Address

13.2 Port Forwarding

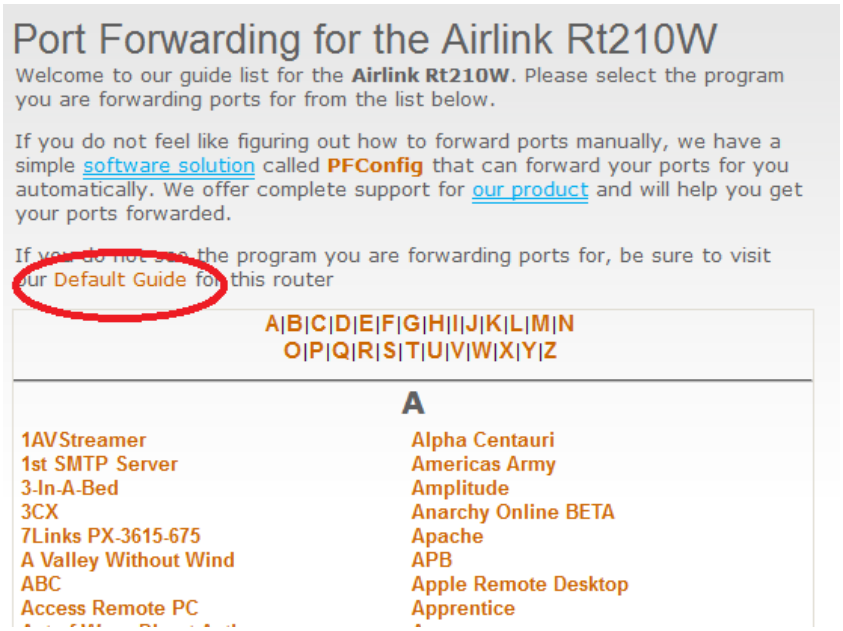
If you are using a router at home with several computers, your router needs to be told which computer on your home network should receive the network data OpenRails needs. This is done by enabling Port Forwarding on the router. The default port OpenRails uses is 30,000. If you change that port number in the game you'll need to change the forwarded port number in the router as well. Your router must be told to forward data arriving from the internet on the correct port to the network IP address of the computer running OpenRails. For more information on Network Address Translation (NAT) and how Port Forwarding works, see this site: http://www.4remotesupport.com/4content/remote_support_NAT.html Here The following are the steps:

1. Go to http://portforward.com/english/routers/port_forwarding/, which contains a lot of ads - just focus on the center of this page.
2. Locate the name of the manufacturer of your router, i.e. Airlink and click it:

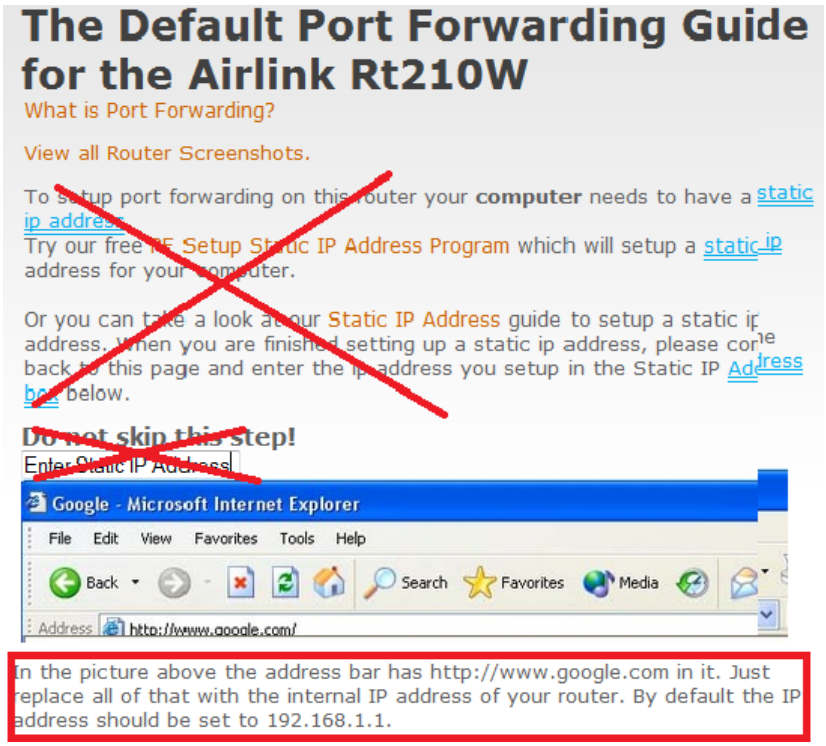
3. A page may appear allowing you to select your specific model of router:



4. It then shows all the programs (games) for which you want to forward ports. Just click “Default Guide”:


Port Forwarding for the Airlink Rt210W
Welcome to our guide list for the Airlink Rt210W. Please select the program you are forwarding ports for from the list below.
If you do not feel like figuring out how to forward ports manually, we have a simple software solution called PFConfig that can forward your ports for you automatically. We offer complete support for our product and will help you get your ports forwarded.
If you do not see the program you are forwarding ports for, be sure to visit our Default Guide for this router
A|B|C|D|E|F|G|H|I|J|K|L|M|N
O|P|Q|R|S|T|U|V|W|X|Y|Z
A
1AVStreamer
1st SMTP Server
3-In-A-Bed
3CX
7Links PX-3615-675
A Valley Without Wind
ABC
Access Remote PC
Alpha Centauri
Americas Army
Amplitude
Anarchy Online BETA
Apache
APB
Apple Remote Desktop
Apprentice

5. A page like the following should appear. Ignore the part crossed-out but pay special attention to the part enclosed in red:


The Default Port Forwarding Guide for the Airlink Rt210W
What is Port Forwarding?
View all Router Screenshots.
To setup port forwarding on this router your computer needs to have a static ip address.
Try our free IP Setup Static IP Address Program which will setup a static ip address for your computer.
Or you can take a look at our Static IP Address guide to setup a static ip address. When you are finished setting up a static ip address, please come back to this page and enter the ip address you setup in the Static IP Address box below.
Do not skip this step!
Enter Static IP Address
Google - Microsoft Internet Explorer
File Edit View Favorites Tools Help
Back Search Favorites Media
Address http://www.google.com/
In the picture above the address bar has http://www.google.com in it. Just replace all of that with the internal IP address of your router. By default the IP address should be set to 192.168.1.1.

6. Then follow the steps listed on the screen. Remember you want to forward port 30,000 by default, but if you change that you’ll have to forward the correct port.
If you still cannot get others connected to your computer, please go to www.tsimserver.com/forums and ask questions.

14 Open Rails Sound Management

14.1 OR vs. MSTS Sound Management

OR executes .sms files to a very high degree of compatibility with MSTS.

14.2 .sms Instruction Set

OR recognizes and manages the whole MSTS .sms instruction set, in a way generally compatible with MSTS. The differences are described below.

The Activation () instruction behaves differently from MSTS with regard to cameras (CabCam, ExternalCam and PassengerCam): in general OR does not consider which cameras are explicitly activated within the .sms files. Instead, it uses a sort of implicit activation, that as a general rule works as follows:

- when in an inside view (cabview or passenger view) the related inside .sms files are heard, plus all external .sms files (with the exception of those related to the trainset where the camera is in that moment): the volume of those external files is attenuated by a 0.75 factor.
- when in an external view all external .sms files are heard.

For an .sms file to be heard, it must be within the activation distance defined in the related instruction.

A hack is available so as to hear only in the cabview some .sms files residing outside the cabview trainset. This can be used e.g. to implement radio messages. For this to work the related .sms file must be called within a .wag file, must contain an Activation (CabCam) statement, and the related wagon must be within a loose consist, within a not yet started AI train or within the consist where the cabview trainset resides.

The ScalabiltyGroup () instruction behaves differently from MSTS for AI trains. While MSTS uses ScalabiltyGroup (0) for AI trains, OR uses for AI trains the same ScalabiltyGroup used for player trains. This way AI train sound can profit from the many more triggers active for AI trains in ORTS. For instance, Variable2 trigger is not active in MSTS for AI trains, while it is in ORTS.

14.3 Discrete Triggers

Unlike MSTS, OR does not restrict the operation of some discrete triggers related to locomotives to the cabview related .sms file (usually named ...cab.sms file). On OR they are all also active in the file related to the external view (usually named ...eng.sms file).

OR manages following MSTS discrete triggers

2 DynamicBrakeIncrease (currently not managed)
3 DynamicBrakeOff
4 SanderOn
5 SanderOff
6 WiperOn
7 WiperOff
8 HornOn

9 HornOff
10 BellOn
11 BellOff
12 CompressorOn
13 CompressorOff
14 TrainBrakePressureIncrease
15 ReverserChange
16 ThrottleChange
17 TrainBrakeChange
18 EngineBrakeChange
20 DynamicBrakeChange
21 EngineBrakePressureIncrease
22 EngineBrakePressureDecrease
27 SteamEjector2On
28 SteamEjector2Off
30 SteamEjector1On
31 SteamEjector1Off
32 DamperChange
33 BlowerChange
34 CylinderCocksToggle
36 FireboxDoorChange
37 LightSwitchToggle
38 WaterScoopDown (currently not managed)
39 WaterScoopUp (currently not managed)
41 FireboxDoorClose
42 SteamSafetyValveOn
43 SteamSafetyValveOff
44 SteamHeatChange (currently not managed).
45 Pantograph1Up
46 Pantograph1Down
47 Pantograph1Toggle (currently not managed)
48 VigilanceAlarmReset
54 TrainBrakePressureDecrease
56 VigilanceAlarmOn
57 VigilanceAlarmOff
58 Couple
59 CoupleB (currently not managed)
60 CoupleC (currently not managed)
61 Uncouple
62 UncoupleB (currently not managed)
63 UncoupleC (currently not managed)

MSTS .sms files for crossings (crossing.sms), control error and permission announcements (ingame.sms) together with their triggers are managed by OR.

MSTS triggers for derailment and fuel tower are currently not managed by OR.

MSTS .sms files related to weather (clear_ex.sms, clear_in.sms, rain_ex.sms, rain_in.sms, snow_ex.sms, snow_in.sms) are managed by OR.

The signal file (signal.sms) and its discrete trigger 1 is managed by OR.

Moreover, OR manages the extended set of discrete triggers provided by MSTSbin.

14.3.1 OR- Specific Discrete Triggers

OR manages the following set of new discrete triggers that were not present under MSTS. If MSTS (or MSTSbin) executes an .sms where such discrete triggers are used, it simply ignores the related statements.

- triggers 101 - GearUp and 102 - GearDown for gear-based engines; they are triggered by the E resp. Shift+E key and they are propagated to all gear-based diesel engines of a train and run also for AI trains
- triggers 103 - ReverserToForwardBackward and 104 - ReverserToNeutral (valid for all locomotive types); this couple of triggers allows to distinguish if the reverser is moved towards an active or towards a neutral position, which is not possible under MSTS
- triggers 105 - DoorOpen and 106 - DoorClose (valid for all locomotive types); they are triggered by the Q and Shift+Q keys and are propagated to the wagons of the consist (that is also the .sms files of the wagons can refer to these triggers)
- triggers 107 - MirrorOpen and 108 - MirrorClose (valid for all locomotive types); they are triggered by the Shift+Q key.

Triggers from 109 to 118 are used for TCS scripting, as follows:

- triggers 109 and 110: TrainControlSystemInfo1 and -Info2
- triggers 111 and 112: TrainControlSystemActivate and -Deactivate
- triggers 113 and 114: TrainControlSystemPenalty1 and -Penalty2
- triggers 115 and 116: TrainControlSystemWarning1 and -Warning2
- triggers 117 and 118: TrainControlSystemAlert1 and -Alert2.

Triggers from 121 to 136 are used to synchronize steam locomotive chuffs with wheel rotation.
The sixteen triggers are divided into two wheel rotations. Therefore every trigger is separated from the preceding one by a rotation angle of 45 degrees.

In addition, OpenRails extends triggers 23 and 24 (electric locomotive power on/power off), that were introduced by MSTSbin, to diesel engines. Keys Y (for diesel player engine) and Shift+Y (for diese helpers), apart from physically powering on and off the diesel engines, trigger the above triggers.

14.4 Variable Triggers

OR manages all of the variable triggers managed by MSTS. There can be some difference in the relationship between physical locomotive variables (e.g. Force) and the related variable. This applies to Variable2 and Variable3.

14.5 Sound Loop Management

Sound loop management instructions are executed as follows by OR:

- StartLoop/ReleaseLoopRelease: the .wav file is continuously looped from beginning to end; when the ReleaseLoopRelease instruction is executed, the .wav file is played up to its end and stopped.
- StartLoopRelease/ReleaseLoopRelease: the .wav file is played from the beginning up to the last CuePoint, and then continuously looped from first to last CuePoint; when

the ReleaseLoopRelease instruction is executed, the .wav file is played up to its end and stopped.

- StartLoopRelease/ReleaseLoopReleaseWithJump: the .wav file is played from the beginning up to the last CuePoint, and then continuously looped from the first to the last CuePoint. When the ReleaseLoopReleaseWithJump instruction is executed, the .wav file is played up to the next CuePoint, then jumps to the last CuePoint and stops. It is recommended to use this pair of instructions only where a jump is effectively needed, as e.g. in horns; this because this couple of instructions is more compute intensive and can lead to short sound breaks in the case of high CPU loads.

14.6 Testing Sound Files at Runtime

The sound debug window is a useful tool for testing.

15 Open Rails Cabs

OR supports both MSTS-compatible 2D cabs as well as native 3D cabs, even on the same locomotive.

15.1 2D Cabs

OR supports with a high degree of compatibility all functions available in MSTS for 2D cabs, and provides some significant enhancements described in the next paragraphs.

OR adds support for the ETCS circular speed gauge, as described here.

15.2 High-resolution Cab Backgrounds and Controls

In MSTS the resolution of the cab background image is limited to 1024x1024; this limitation does not apply in OR as the result of OR's better handling of large textures.

2D cab backgrounds can reach at least to 3072x3072; however very fine results can be obtained with a resolution of 2560x1600. The image does not have to be square.

2D cab animations have also been greatly improved; you are reminded here that there are two types of animated rotary gauges, i.e. normal gauges and general animations using multiple frames. In this second case in MSTS all of the frames had to be present in a single texture with a max resolution of 640x480. In OR these frames can be as large as one likes and OR will scale them to the correct size. In general it is not necessary to use a resolution greater than 200x200 for every frame.

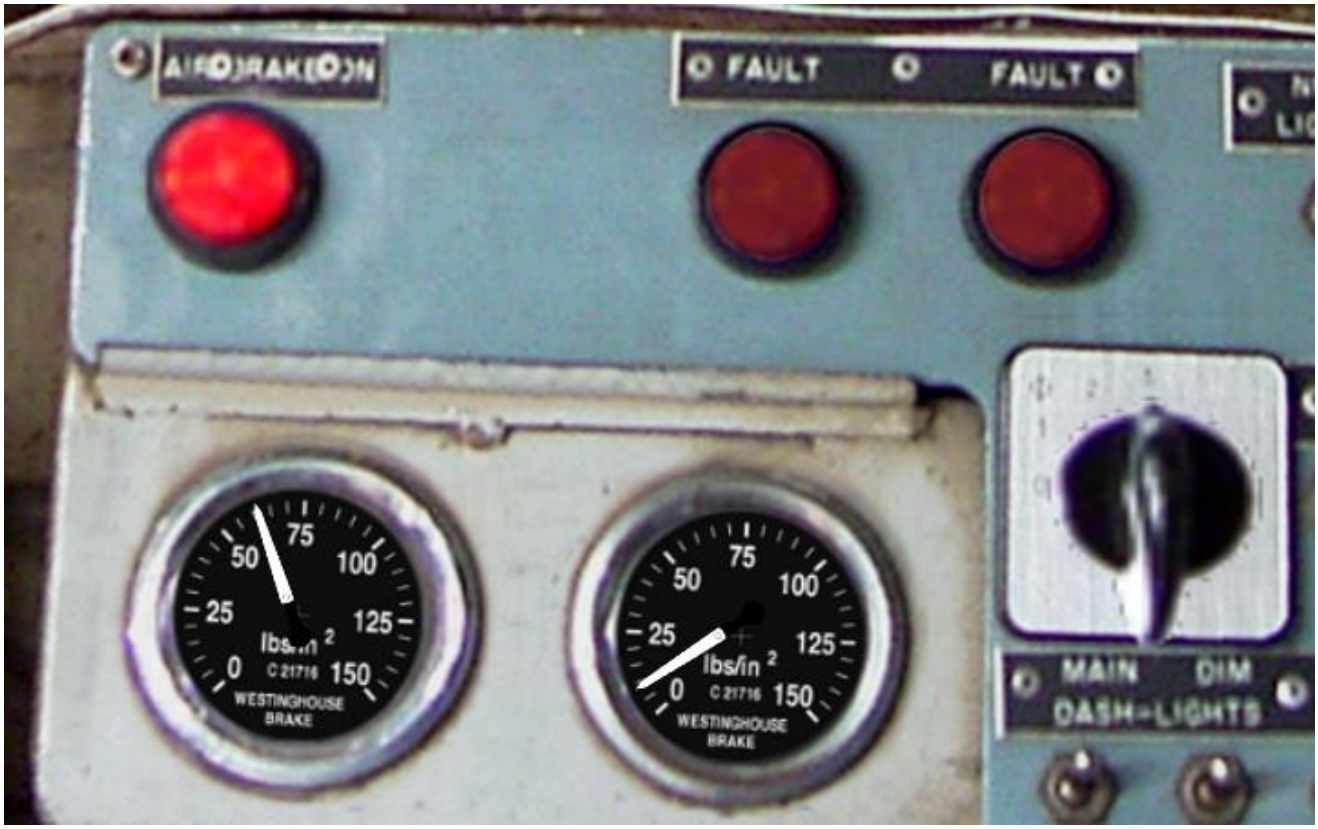
The syntax to be used in the .cvf file is the standard one as defined by MSTS.

To clarify this, the position parameters of a sample needle block are described here.

In the "Position" statement, the first 2 numbers are the position of the top left-hand side of the needle texture in cabview units with the needle in the vertical position. In the Dial type the last 2 numbers are the size of the needle texture. The last number (50 in the example) controls the scaling of the needle texture, i.e. changing this changes the size of the needle that OR displays.

```
Dial (
Type ( SPEEDOMETER DIAL )
Position ( 549 156 10 50 )
Graphic ( Speed_recorder_needle_2.01.ace )
Style ( NEEDLE )
ScaleRange ( 0 140 )
ScalePos ( 243 115 )
Units ( KM_PER_HOUR )
Pivot ( 38 )
DirIncrease ( 0 )
```

AIR BRAKE ON
FAULT
FAULT
NUM. LIGHTS
VEST. LIGHT
VOITH TRANSMISSION
LHS RHS DESIGNATION
Fwd
Rev
MAIN DIM DASH-LIGHTS
LHS RHS CAB HEATERS
km/h
MAIN RESERVOIR
Track Monitor


AIR BRAKE ON
FAULT
FAULT
lbs/in 2
C 21716
WESTINGHOUSE BRAKE
MAIN DIM DASH-LIGHTS

Shown above are two pictures of one hi-res 2D cabview, one showing the whole cab, and the other one showing the detail of some controls. In this example the cab background image used was cut down to 2560x1600. The texture for the Speed Recorder needle is 183x39 and for the brake gauge needles is 181x29, Note the odd number for the width. This is required as OR (and MSTS) assume the needle is in the center of the image. The Reversing and Headlight switch animation frames are 116x116.

There are as yet no specific tools to create these cabviews; a standard image manipulation program to do all textures is required, and to create any new items, e.g. the gauge faces, a standard drawing program can be used. To actual set up the cabview and to position the animations the .cvf file is modified with a standard text editor, and OR is used as a viewer, using a straight section of track on a quick loading route. Through successive iterations one arrives quite quickly at a satisfactory result.

15.2.1 Configurable Fonts

OR supports a configurable font family, with font size selection, and a choice of regular or bold style. More than one font or size can be used in the same cabview. Here is an example:

An optional line of the format ORTSfont (fontsize fontstyle "fontfamily") has to be inserted in the .cvf block of the digital control or digital clock, where ‘fontsize’ is a float (default value 10), ‘fontstyle’ an integer having the value 0 (default) for regular and 1 for bold, and ‘fontfamily’ is a string with the font family name (ex. "Times New Roman"). The default is "Courier New".

This is an example that displays a 12 pt. bold font using the Sans Serif font family.

```
DigitalClock (
      Type ( CLOCK DIGITAL_CLOCK )
      Position ( 40 350 56 11 )
      Style ( 12HOUR )
      Accuracy ( 1 )
      ControlColour ( 255 255 255 )
      ORTSFont ( 12 1 "Sans Serif" )
      )
```

Only the first parameter of ORTSFont can be present, or only the first two, or all three.
Note that you cannot use the MS Cabview editor on the .cvf file after having inserted these optional lines, because the editor will delete these added lines when the file is saved.

15.3 3D cabs

The key to enter into a 3D cab (provided the player locomotive has one) is Alt+1.

15.3.1 Development Rules

for content developers:

1. The 3D cab is described by an .s file, the associated .ace or .dds files; and a .cvf file having the same name as the .s file. All these files reside in a folder named “CABVIEW3D” created within the main folder of the locomotive.
2. If the .cvf file cannot be found in the CABVIEW3D folder, the 3D cab is associated with the .cvf file of the 2D cab.
3. Instruments are named with the same conventions as 2D cabs, i.e. FRONT_HLIGHT, SPEEDOMETER, etc.
4. A cab can have multiple instances of the same instruments, for example multiple clocks or speedometers.
5. Instruments are sorted based on the order of their appearance in the .cvf file, for example SPEEDOMETER:0 corresponds to the first speedometer in the .cvf file, SPEEDOMETER:1 corresponds to the second one.
6. An instrument can have multiple subgroups to make the animation realistic, for example, TRAIN_BRAKE:0:0 and TRAIN_BRAKE:0:1 belong to the instrument TRAIN_BRAKE:0.
   However, if the instrument is a digital device, the second number will be used to indicate the font size used, for example SPEEDOMETER:1:14 means the second speedometer (which is digital as defined in .cvf) will be rendered with 14pt font. This may be changed in future OR releases. The important information for a digital device is its location, thus it can be defined as an object with a small single face in the 3D model.
7. Animation ranges must be in agreement with the .cvf file
8. Within the Wagon section of the .eng file a block like the following one has to be generated:

```
ORTS3DCab(
      ORTS3DCabFile ( Cab.s )
      ORTS3DCabHeadPos ( -0.9 2.4 5.2 )
      RotationLimit ( 40 60 0 )
      StartDirection ( 12 0 0 )
)
```

9. It is also possible to animate the wipers, by inserting into the .s file an animation named EXTERNALWIPERS:0:0
10. Gauges of solid type have to be named AMMETER:1:10:100; where the three numbers indicate that this is the second ammeter, that it has a width 10mm, and a maximum length of 100mm. The color and direction/orientation follow those defined in .cvf files.
11. Digits for 3D cabs can now use custom ACE files; e.g. name the part as CLOCK:1:15:CLOCKS. This will draw the second clock with 15mm font dimension, with the CLOCKS.ACE file in CABVIEW3D containing the font. If no ace is specified, the default will be used.

12. Mirrors and doors can be operated from 3D cabs. Names to be used are LEFTDOOR, RIGHTDOOR and MIRRORS.

A demo trainset with a 3Dcab, that may be useful for developers, can be downloaded from:

http://www.tsimserver.com/Download/Df11G3DCab.zip.

15.3.2 A Practical Development Example For a Digital Speedometer

for content developers:

Let's suppose you have to create a digital speedometer using a font with size 14.

To explain it in 'gmax' speak, you must have an object called 'SPEEDOMETER' in the cab view and it must be comprised of at least one face.

As the sample cab has only one digital speedometer, it can be named SPEEDOMETER_0_14.

The number 0 indicates that this is the first speedometer gauge in the cab and the number 14 indicates the size of the font to display. Note that an underscore is used to separate the numbers as the LOD export tool does not support the use of colons in object names when exporting. More on this later.

The speed does not display where the face for the SPEEDOMETER object is located but where the 'pivot point' for the SPEEDOMETER object is located. Normally you would place the SPEEDOMETER object somewhere in the cab where it will not be seen.

With the 'SPEEDOMETER_0_14' object selected in gmax, go to the 'Hierarchy' tab, select 'Affect Pivot Only' and click 'Align to World' to reset the orientation to world coordinates. Then use the 'Select and Move' tool to move the pivot to where in the cab you wish the numerals to appear. As you have aligned the pivot point to World coordinates the numerals will display vertically. As most locomotive primary displays are normally angled you may have to rotate the pivot point so that it aligns with the angle of the 'display screen'.

Export the .S file for the cab as per normal.

You will then have to uncompress the .s file for the cab using Shape File Manager or the .S file decompression tool of your choice.

Then open the .S file with a text editor and search for the letters 'speed' until you find the first instance of SPEEDOMETER_0_14 and change it to be SPEEDOMETER:0:14. Search again and find the second instance of SPEEDOMETER_0_14 and change that also to SPEEDOMETER:0:14. Save the .S file in the text editor.

Now just one more thing. Download the DF11G3DCab demo trainset. In the CABVIEW3D folder of that download you will find an ace file called 'SPEED.ACE'. Copy that file and paste it into the CABVIEW3D folder for your model.

Now, open OR and test your speedometer.

16 OR-Specific Route Features

As a general rule and as already stated, Open Rails provides all route functionalities that were already available for MSTS, plus some opportunities such as also accepting textures in .dds format.

OR provides a simple way to add snow terrain textures: the following default snow texture names are recognized: ORTSDefaultSnow.ace and ORTSDefaultDMSnow.ace, to be positioned within folder TERRTEX\SNOW of the concerned route. For the snow textures that are missing in the SNOW subfolder, and only for them, ORTS uses such files to display snow, if they are present, instead of using file blank.bmp.

To have a minimum working snow texture set, the file microtex.ace must also be present in the SNOW subfolder.

17 Developing OR Content

Open Rails is defining and developing its own development tools.

However it is already possible to develop OR content (rolling stock, routes, 3D objects, activities) using the tools used to develop MSTS content, thanks to the high compatibility that OR has with MSTS. Below, some of the advantages of OR-specific content are described.

17.1 Rolling Stock

1. OR is able to display shapes with many more polygons than MSTS. Shapes with more than 100.000 polys have been developed and displayed without problems.
2. Thanks to the additional physics description parameters, a much more realistic behavior of the rolling stock is achieved.
3. 3D cabs add realism.
4. OR graphics renders the results of the rolling stock developers at higher resolution.
5. Rolling stock running on super-elevated track improves gaming experience.

17.2 Routes

1. Routes are displayed in higher resolution.
2. Extended viewing distance yields much more realism.
3. Double overhead wire increases the realism of electrified routes.
4. Extended signaling features provide more realistic signal behavior.

17.3 Activities

1. Timetable mode is a new activity type available only in Open Rails that allows for development of timetable based gaming sessions.
2. By using the dispatcher monitor window, the dispatcher HUD, and the ability to switch the camera to any AI train, the player can more closely monitor and control the execution of conventional activities.
3. Extended AI shunting greatly increases the interactions between trains.
4. New OR-specific additions to activity (.act) files enhance activities.

17.4 Testing and Debugging Tools

As listed here, a rich and powerful set of analysis tools eases the testing and debugging of content under development.

17.5 Open Rails Best Practices

17.5.1 Polys vs. Draw Calls – What's Important

Poly counts are still important in Open Rails software, but with newer video cards they're much less important than in the early days of MSTS. What does remain important to both environments are Draw Calls.

A Draw Call occurs when the CPU sends a block of data to the Video Card. Each model in view, plus terrain, will evoke one or more Draw Calls per frame (i.e., a frame rate of 60/second means all of the draw calls needed to display a scene are repeated 60 times a second). Given the large number of models displayed in any scene and a reasonable frame rate, the total number of Draw Calls per second creates a very large demand on the CPU. Open Rails software will adjust the frame rate according to the number of required Draw Calls. For example, if your CPU can handle 60,000 Draw Calls per second and the scene in view requires 1000 Draw Calls, your frame rate per second will be 60. For the same CPU, if the scene requires 2000 Draw Calls, your frame rate per second will be 30. Newer design / faster CPU's can do more Draw Calls per second than older design / slower CPU's.

Generally speaking, each Draw Call sends one or more polygon meshes for each occurrence of a texture file for a model (and usually more when there are multiple material types). What this means in practice is if you have a model that uses two texture files and there are three instances of that model in view there will be six draw calls – once for each of the models (3 in view) times once for each texture file (2 files used), results in six Draw Calls. As an aid to performance Open Rails will examine a scene and will issue Draw Calls for only the models that are visible. As you rotate the camera, other models will come into view and some that were in view will leave the scene, resulting in a variable number of Draw Calls, all of which will affect the frame rate.

Model builders are advised that the best performance will result by not mixing different material types in a texture file as well as using the fewest number of texture files as is practical.

17.6 Support

Support can be requested on the OR forum on www.elvastower.com/forums .

The OR development team, within the limits of its possibilities, is willing to support contents developers.

18 Version 1.0 Known Issues

18.1 Water Pickup from Troughs

This capability of MSTS has not yet been implemented in ORTS. Currently, there is a temporary solution – by default, the key T (Refill) performs a refill of the water to the 100% level when the locomotive is more than 2000 m. from a water source. Refilling from water towers is currently implemented.

18.2 Empty "Effects" Section in .eng File

If an engine file is used that has an Effects() section that contains no data, the engine will not be loaded by ORTS.

19 In Case Of Malfunction

19.1 Introduction

When you have an issue with Open Rails (ORTS), no matter what it is, the OR development team is always thankful for reports of possible bugs. Of course, it is up to the developers to decide if something is a real bug, but in any case your reporting of it is an important step in helping the development team to improve Open Rails.

19.2 Overview of Bug Types

The development team uses two ways of keeping track of bugs:

1. So called "Maybe-Bugs" are reported in a simple forum post: see next paragraph for links. This is done in order to give developers a chance to filter out problems caused by circumstances the development team cannot control such as corrupted content.
2. Decided Bugs are issues a developer has looked at and has found to be a real issue in the program code of Open Rails. They are reported at our Bug Tracker at https://bugs.Launchpad.net/or/ (registration is required).

19.3 “Maybe-Bugs”

If you find an issue with Open Rails you should first file a Maybe-Bug report at any of the following forums monitored by the Open Rails development team:

- Elvas Tower (http://www.elvastower.com/), "Maybe it´s a bug" section of the Open Rails sub-forum. This is the forum that is most frequently checked by the OR development team;
- TrainSim.com (http://www.trainsim.com/), "Open Rails discussion" section of the Open Rails sub-forum
- MJRMSTSRepaints (http://mjrmstsrepaints.proboards.com/)

...more forums may be added in the future

A Maybe-Bug report consists of a simple post in a new topic in the forum. The title of the topic should be of the form "Open Rails V#### Bug: +++++", where #### is the version number of the Open Rails release you are having problems with, and +++++ is a quick description of the problem you are having. This format aids the developers in getting a quick idea of the issue being reported.

The first post in this newly started topic should give further information on your problem: Start out with exactly what problem you are getting, describing it in narrative and supplementing this description with screenshots, error messages produced by Open Rails, and so on.

Next give a clear indication of the content you were using (that is: Route, Activity, Path, Consist, Locomotive and Rolling Stock; whatever is applicable), whether it is freeware or payware, what the exact name of the downloaded package was and where it can be obtained. Of course, posting a download link to a trustworthy site or directly attaching files to the post also is OK.

Continue with an exact description of what you were doing when the problem arose (this may already be included in the first paragraph, if the problem is train-operation-related). Again, screenshots etc. can be helpful to better describe the situation.

Lastly, take a look at your desktop for a text (*.TXT) file entitled OpenRailsLog.txt. Upload and attach this file to the end of your post. This is very important as the log file contains all relevant program data the user has no chance to ever see, and thus it is one of the most important sources of information for the developer trying to solve your problem.

Once your post has been submitted, keep adding further information only in additional posts, in order to avoid the risk of people not noticing your edits. Also, please be patient with developers responding to your report. Most forums are checked only once a day, so it may take some time for a developer to see your report.

Important: The more information a developer gets from the first post, the quicker he will be able to locate, identify and eventually resolve a bug. On the other hand, reports of the form, "I have problem XYZ with recently installed Open Rails. Can you help me?" are of little use, as all required information must be asked for first.

Important: Please do not rush to report a Decided Bug on the Bug Tracker before a developer has declared your problem a real bug!

The above description is available in a condensed "checklist" form below.

19.4 Decided bugs

Most bug reports never even make it to the status of a Decided Bug, due to either being resolved too quickly to be worthy of an entry on the Bug Tracker or being a content or user error. Some Maybe-Bugs, however, will eventually be declared Decided Bugs. Such secured bugs should be reported at our Bug Tracker, when the developer taking the report asks you to.

The Open Rails Bug Tracker is found at https://bugs.Launchpad.net/or/, following the "Report a bug" link in the upper half to the right of the screen. You will need to register at Launchpad in order to be able to report a bug.

Once that is done, follow the steps the software takes you through: In "Summary" copy and paste the quick description of the bug you also entered as a forum thread name for the Maybe-Bug report.

Next, look through the list of topics Launchpad thinks your bug may be related to - maybe your issue has already been reported?

If you cannot relate to any of the suggested bugs, click the "No, I need a new bug report" button and continue.

In the "Further Information" field, enter the same info you also gave in the Maybe-Bug report (copy and paste). Screenshots may need to be added as attachments, and you will also need to re-upload the OpenRailsLog.txt file. Do not forget to include all info you added in additional posts to the original Maybe-Bug report, and also add a link to the latter at the bottom of the "Further Information" field.

Once your bug has been submitted, keep adding further information only in additional posts, in order to avoid the risk of developers missing the additional info.

The above description is available in a condensed "checklist" form below.

Important: Do not say "All information is included in the linked thread" as skimming through a

thread for the crucial bit of information is a really annoying task. Instead, please provide a concise, but complete summary of the Maybe-Bug thread in the "Further Information" field.

Important: Please do not rush to report a Decided Bug on our Bug Tracker before a developer has declared your Maybe-Bug a real bug!

19.5 Additional Notes

Please do not post feature requests as a Maybe-Bug to the Bug Tracker on Launchpad!

Please do not report the same bug multiple times, just because the first report did not get attention within a short time. Sorting out the resulting confusion can slow things down even more.

Please do not report Bugs directly to the Bug Tracker when you are not 100% sure it´s a real, significant bug, or have not been asked to do so.

Don't be offended by bug statuses - they often sound harsher than they really mean, like "Invalid".

Don't expect a speedy response in general - issues will get looked at as and when people have the time.

Be prepared to expand upon the initial report - it is remarkably easy to forget some crucial detail that others need to find and fix your bug, so expect to be asked further questions before work can begin.

Try to avoid comments that add no technical or relevant detail - if you want to record that the bug affects you, Launchpad has a dedicated button at the top: "Does this bug affect you?".

If you wish to follow the progress of someone else's bug report and get e-mail notifications, you can subscribe to bug mail from the sidebar.

19.6 Summary: Bug Report Checklists

19.6.1 “Maybe-Bug”

- New topic in appropriate sub-forum
- Topic Title: "Open Rails V<version> Bug: <description>"
- Description of problem, supplemented by screenshots etc.
- Content used (Route, Activity, Path, Consist, Locomotive & Rolling Stock; choose applicable); Freeware / Payware?; Package name & download location / download link
- Narrative of actions shortly before & at time of problem, supplemented by screenshots etc.
- Attach log file (Desktop: OpenRailsLog.txt)
- Add further info only in additional posts
- Be patient

19.6.2 Decided Bug

- Report to Bug Tracker only if asked to do so
- https://bugs.Launchpad.net/or/ (Registration required) -> "Report a bug"
- "Summary": Description from the topic title of the Maybe-Bug report

- Look for similar, already reported bugs
- Condense whole Maybe-Bug thread into "Further information" field
- Add link to original Maybe-Bug report
- Re-upload and attach OpenRailsLog.txt & explanatory screenshots etc.
- Add further info only in additional posts
- Be patient

19.7 Bug Status in Launchpad

- **New** - this is where all bugs start. At this point, the bug has not been looked at by the right people to check whether it is complete or if more details are needed.
- **Incomplete** - a member of the Open Rails teams has decided that the bug needs more information before it can be fixed. The person who created the bug report does not have to be the one to provide the extra details. A bug remaining incomplete for 60 consecutive days is automatically removed.
- **Opinion** - the bug has been identified as an opinion, meaning that it isn't clear whether there is actually a bug or how things should be behaving.
- **Invalid** - a member of the team believes that the report is not actually a bug report. This may be because Open Rails is working as designed and expected or it could just be spam. The bug may be put back to the new state if further information or clarity is provided in comments.
- **Won't Fix** - a member of the team has decided that this bug will not be fixed at this time. If the bug report is a "feature request", then they have decided that the feature isn't desired right now. This status does not mean something will never happen but usually a better reason for fixing the bug or adding the feature will be needed first.
- **Confirmed** - a member of the team has been able to experience the bug as well, by following the instructions in the bug report.
- **Triaged** – a member of the team has assigned the importance level to the bug or has assigned it to a specific milestone. Bugs generally need to get to this state before the developers will want to look at them in detail.
- **In Progress** - one or more members of the team are currently planning to or actually working on the bug report. They will be identified by the assignee field.
- **Fix Committed** - the fix for the bug report or feature request has been completed and checked in to the source control system, Subversion. Once there, the fix will usually appear in the next experimental release.
- **Fix Released** - The code containing the bug fix has been released in an official release.

19.8 Disclaimer

Having posted a bug report in a forum or in Launchpad does not generate any obligation or liability or commitment for the OR development team to examine and fix the bug. The OR development team decides whether it will examine and fix the bug on a completely voluntary and autonomous basis.

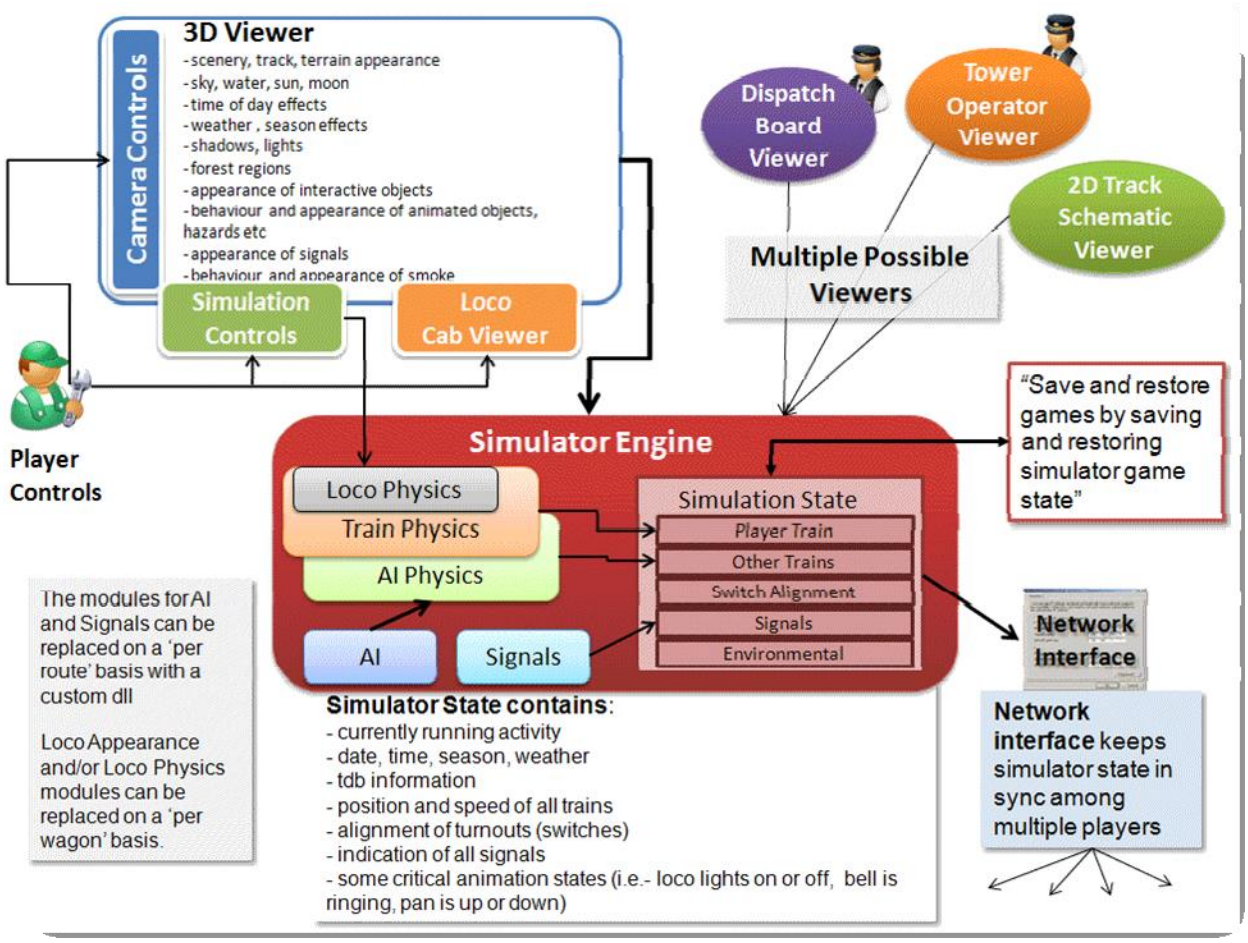
20 Open Rails Software Platform

Inside view:

20.1 Architecture

To better understand how the Open Rails game operates, performs, and functions, the architecture diagram below lays out how the software code is organized. The architecture of the Open Rails software allows for modular extension and development, while providing standardized methods to customize the simulation experience.

Please note that this diagram includes many capabilities and functions that are yet to be implemented.


3D Viewer
-scenery, track, terrain appearance
-sky, water, sun, moon
-time of day effects
-weather , season effects
-shadows, lights
-forest regions
-appearance of interactive objects
-behaviour and appearance of animated objects, hazards etc
-appearance of signals
-behaviour and appearance of smoke
Camera Controls
Simulation Controls
Loco Cab Viewer
Dispatch Board Viewer
Tower Operator Viewer
2D Track Schematic Viewer
Multiple Possible Viewers
Player Controls
Simulator Engine
Loco Physics
Train Physics
AI Physics
AI
Signals
Simulation State
Player Train
Other Trains
Switch Alignment
Signals
Environmental
"Save and restore games by saving and restoring simulator game state"
Network Interface
Network interface keeps simulator state in sync among multiple players
The modules for AI and Signals can be replaced on a 'per route' basis with a custom dll
Loco Appearance and/or Loco Physics modules can be replaced on a 'per wagon' basis.
Simulator State contains:
- currently running activity
- date, time, season, weather
- tdb information
- position and speed of all trains
- alignment of turnouts (switches)
- indication of all signals
- some critical animation states (i.e.- loco lights on or off, bell is ringing, pan is up or down)

20.2 Open Rails Game Engine

The Open Rails software is built on Microsoft's XNA game platform using XNA Framework 3.1 and .NET Framework 3.5 SP1. Source code is developed in Microsoft's Visual C# programming language.

The XNA Framework is based on the native implementation of .NET Compact Framework for Xbox 360 development and .NET Framework on Windows. It includes an extensive set of class libraries, specific to game development, to promote maximum code reuse across target platforms. The framework runs on a version of the Common Language Runtime that is optimized for gaming to provide a managed execution environment. The runtime is available for Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, and Xbox 360. Since XNA games are written for the runtime, they can run on any platform that supports the XNA Framework with minimal or no modification of the Game engine.

A license fee is payable to Microsoft to use XNA Game Studio for Xbox 360 games. At this time, the Open Rails team has not investigated whether the Open Rails software is suitable for Xbox.

20.3 Frames per Second (FPS) Performance

For the current release, the Open Rails development team has untethered the FPS rate from the sync rate of the monitor. This allows the development team to more easily document performance improvements. The Open Rails team at a later date may decide to limit FPS to the sync rate of the monitor.

20.4 Game Clock and Internal Clock

Like other simulation software, Open Rails software uses two internal “clocks”; a game clock and an internal clock. The game clock is required to synchronize the movement of trains, signal status, and present the correct game environment. The internal clock is used synchronize the software process for optimal efficiency and correct display of the game environment.

The Open Rails team is dedicated to ensuring the game clock properly manages time in the simulation, so that a train will cover the proper distance in the correct time. The development team considers this vital aspect for an accurate simulation by ensuring activities run consistently across community members’ computer systems.

20.5 Resource Utilization

Because Open Rails software is designed for Microsoft’s XNA game framework, it natively exploits today’s graphics cards’ ability to offload much of the display rendering workload from the computer’s CPU.

20.6 Multi-Threaded Coding

The Open Rails software is designed from the ground up to support up to 4 CPUs, either as virtual or physical units. Instead of a single thread looping and updating all the elements of the simulation, the software uses four threads for the main functions of the software.

Thread 1 - Main Render Loop (RenderProcess)
Thread 2 - Physics and Animation (UpdaterProcess)
Thread 3 - Shape and Texture Loading/Unloading (LoaderProcess)
Thread 4 – Sound

There are other threads used by the multiplayer code as each opened communication is handled

by a thread.

The RenderProcess runs in the main game thread. During its initialization, it starts two subsidiary threads, one of which runs the UpdaterProcess and the other the LoaderProcess. It is important that the UpdaterProcess stays a frame ahead of RenderProcess, preparing any updates to camera, sky, terrain, trains, etc. required before the scene can be properly rendered. If there are not sufficient compute resources for the UpdaterProcess to prepare the next frame for the RenderProcess, the software reduces the frame rate until it can “catch up”.

Initial testing indicates that “stutters” are significantly reduced because the process (LoaderProcess) associated with loading shapes and textures when crossing tile boundaries do not compete with the main rendering loop (RenderProcess) for the same CPU cycles. Thread safety issues are handled primarily through data partitioning rather than locks or semaphores to maximise performance.

Ongoing testing by the Open Rails team and the community will determine what and where the practical limits of the software lie. As the development team receives feedback from the community, improvements and better optimization of the software will contribute to better overall performance – potentially allowing high polygon models with densely populated routes at acceptable frame rates.

21 Plans and Roadmap

Here are some highlights that the community can expect from the Open Rails team after v1.0. A more complete roadmap can be found at https://launchpad.net/or/+milestones

21.1 User Interface

A new Graphical User Interface (GUI) within the game.

21.2 Operations

In addition to the new Timetable concept described in this document, some further improvements are planned:

- Extended ability to customize signals to accommodate regional, geographic, or operational differences
- Ability to use mixed signal environments - from dark territory to fully automatic in-cab train control within the same route
- Specifying random variations for AI trains in consist and delays.
- Specifying separate speed profiles for passenger or freight trains.
- AI trains which can split or combine
- A schedule for AI trains which can depend on other trains (e.g. wait a limited time).

21.3 Open Rails Route Editor

Now that the project is moving beyond MSTS, we are at last able to specify the Open Rails Route Editor. This will free us from the constraints and fragility of the MSTS tool. The editor will, of course, use GIS data, edit the terrain and allow objects to be placed and moved.

In particular, it will be possible to lay both track pieces and procedural track. The procedural track may bend up and down to follow the contours of the land and twist to build banked curves and spirals. There will be support for transition curves and it will be easy to lay a new track parallel to an existing one.

The new Route Editor will not be backwards-compatible with MSTS routes. It will work with Open Rails routes and there will be a utility to create an Open Rails route from an MSTS route.

No timetable is available for this work.

22 Acknowledgements

Open Rails is the result of true teamwork performed by a group of passionate people. We owe a massive thanks to all of them and therefore wish to mention them below and excuse ourselves if someone has been forgotten:

- Adam Kane
- Adam Miles
- Alex Bloom
- Andre Ming[1]
- Anthony Brailsford
- Barrie Scott
- Barry Munro
- Bill Currey
- Bill Prieger
- Bob Boudoin
- Bruno Sanches
- Carlo Santucci
- Chris Jakeman[1]
- Chris Van Wagoner
- Craig Benner
- Daniel Leach
- David B. Clarke
- Dennis Towlson
- Derek Morton
- Doug Kightley
- Douglas Jones
- Edward Keenan
- Eric Pannese
- Eric Swenson
- Eugen Rippstein
- Fabian Joris
- György Sárosi
- Greg Davies
- Hank Sundermeyer
- Haifeng Li
- James Ross[1]
- Jan Vytlačil
- Jean-Louis Chauvin
- Jeff Bush
- Jeffrey Kraus-Yao
- Jijun Tang
- Jim Jendro
- Jim Ward
- John Sandford
- Joseph Hoevet
- Joseph Realmuto
- Larry Steiner
- Laurie Heath
- Lutz Doellermann
- Marc Nelson
- Markus Gelbmann
- Matêj Pácha
- Matt Peddlesden
- Matt Munro
- Paul Bourke
- Paul Gausden
- Paul Wright
- Peter Gulyas
- Peter Newark
- Phil Voxland
- Remus Iancu
- Richard Plokhaar
- Rick Grout
- Rick Hargraves
- Riemer Grootjans
- Rob Lane
- Robert Hodgson
- Robert Murphy
- Roberto Ceccarelli
- Robert Roeterdink
- Samuel Kelly
- Scott Miller
- Sid Penstone
- Tim Muir
- Walter Niehoff
- Wes Card

and **…**

[1] Member of the Open Rails Management Team

Dave Nelson for providing us a meeting place at Elvas Tower,
Pete Peddlesden for hosting our website and repository,
and of course, Wayne Campbell for inspiring this improbable journey.

23 Appendices

23.1 Units of Measure

Open Rails supports the same default units of measure as MSTS which are mostly, but not exclusively, metric.

When creating models just for Open Rails, we recommend you do not use defaults but specify units for all values that represent physical quantities.

As shown below, Open Rails provides a wider choice of units than MSTS.

Measure	Default unit	Applies to	OR accepts	MSTS accepts	Comment
Mass	kg		kg	kg	
			t	t	metric tonne (1,000 kg)
			lb	lb	
			t-uk		Imperial ton (2,240 lb)
			t-us		US ton (2,000 lb)
Distance			mm		
			cm	cm	
	m		m	m	
			km		
			in	in	
			in/2	in/2	half-inch - historic unit for tyre diameters
			ft		
			mile		
Area			m^2		
			*(m^2)	*(m^2)	
	ft^2		ft^2		
			*(ft^2)	*(ft^2)	
Volume	l	diesel fuel	l		litres
			m^3		
			*(m^3)		
			in^3		
			*(in^3)		
	ft^3	other	*(ft^3)	*(ft^3)	e.g. BoilerVolume
			g-uk		Imperial gallons
			g-us		US gallons
			gal		US gallons
			gals	gals	US gallons

Measure	Default unit	Applies to	OR accepts	MSTS accepts	Comment
Time	second		s		
			m		
			h		
Current	amp		a		
			amp		
Voltage	volt		v		
			kv		
Mass Rate of Change			g/h		
			kg/h		
	lb/h		lb/h	lb/h	
Speed	m/s	other	m/s	m/s	metres per second
			km/h		
			kph	kph	kilometres per hour
			kmh	kmh	misspelling accepted by MSTS
	mph	dynamic brake	mph	mph	miles per hour
Frequency	hz		hz		Hertz
			rps		revolutions per second
			rpm		
Force	N		n	n	Newton
			kn	kn	
			lbf		Pounds force
			lb		
Power	w		w		Watt
			kw		
			hp		horsepower
Stiffness	n/m		n/m	n/m	Newtons per metre
Resistance	n/m/s		n/m/s	n/m/s	Newtons per metre per second
			ns/m		Newton seconds per metre
Angular Resistance	n/rad/s			n/rad/s	

Measure	Default unit	Applies to	OR accepts	MSTS accepts	Comment
Pressure	psi	air pressure	psi		pounds per square inch
			bar		atmospheres
			kpa		Kilopascals
	inhg	vacuum	inhg		inches of mercury
Pressure Rate of Change	psi/s		psi/s		
			bar/s		
			kpa/s		
			inhg/s		
Energy Density	kj/kg		kj/kg		Kilojoules per kilogram
			j/g		
			btu/lb		Board of Trade Units per pound
Temperature Difference	degc		degc		
			degf		
Angle	radians		-		
				deg	
Angular Rate	rad/s		-	rad/s	
Other			-	lb/hp/h	e.g. CoalBurnage